Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener

20. Juli 2011

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic



Organisation, **Overview**

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 [臣]

Organisation

Contact

- Klaus Madlener
- Patrick Michel
- Christoph Feller
- http://www-madlener.informatik.uni-kl.de/teaching/ss2011/

Dates, Time, and Location

- 3C + 3R (8 ECTS-LP)
- Monday, 11:45-13:15, room 48-462
- Wednesday, 11:45-13:15, room 48-462 or room 32-411
- Thursday, 11:45-13:15, room 48-462

Introduction .



Course Webpage

http://www-madlener.informatik.uni-kl.de/teaching/ss2011/svhol/

Literature

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 [臣]

Organisation (cont.)

- L. C. Paulson. *ML for the Working Programmer.* Cambridge University Press, 1996.
- R. Harper. *Programming in Standard ML*. Available at http://www.cs.cmu.edu/ rwh/smlbook/book.pdf. Carnegie Mellon University, 2009.
- T. Nipkow, L. C. Paulson and M. Wenzel. Isabelle/HOL A Proof Assistant for Higher-Order Logic. Springer LNCS 2283, 2002
- Prof. Basin, Dr. Brucker, Dr. Smaus, Prof. Wolff Material of course CSMR http://www.infsec.ethz.ch/education/permanent/csmr/slides

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨト

Organisation (cont.)

Acknowledgements

- ▶ to Dr. Jens Brandt who designed most of the slides
- > Prof. Dr. Arnd Poetzsch-Heffter for providing his course material
- Prof. Basin, Dr. Brucker, Dr. Smaus, Prof. Wolff, and the MMISS-project for the slides on CSMR
- Prof. Nipkow for the slides on Isabelle/HOL.
- to the Isabelle/HOL community

-

Overview

Overview

Course Outline

- Introduction
- Concepts of functional programming
- Higher-order logic
- Verification in Isabelle/HOL (and other theorem provers)
- Verification of algorithms: A case study
- Modeling and verification of finite software systems: A case study
- Specification of programming languages
- Verification of a Hoare logics
- Beyond interactive theorem proving

(4回) (4 注) (4 注) (注)

・ロット (四) マイロット (日) - 日 -

Overall structure

- 1. Introduction
- 2. Functional specification and programming
- 3. Language and semantical aspects of higher-order logic
- 4. Proof system for higher-order logic
- 5. Sets, functions, relations, and fixpoints
- 6. Verifying functions
- 7. Inductively defined sets
- 8. Specification of programming language semantics
- 9. Program verification and programming logic

Overall structure

Chapter 1: Introduction

- 1. Terminology: Specification, verification, logic
- 2. Language: Syntax and semantics
- 3. Proof systems
 - 3.1 Hilbert style proof systems
 - 3.2 Proof system for natural deduction

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Chapter 2: Functional programming and specification

- 1. Functional programming in ML
- 2. A simple theorem prover: Structure and unification
- 3. Functional specification in isabelle/HOL
- » slides_02: 1-65
- » slides_02: 77-101
- » Chapter 2 and 3 of Isabelle/HOL Tutorial

Chapter 3: Language and semantical aspects of HOL

- 1. Introduction to higher-order logic
- 2. Foundation of higher-order logic
- 3. Conservative extension of theories

Chapter 4: Proof system for HOL

- 1. Formulas, sequents, and rules revisited
- 2. Application of rules
- 3. Fundamental methods of Isabelle/HOL
- 4. An overview of theory Main
 - 4.1 The structure of theory Main
 - 4.2 Set construction in Isabelle/HOL
 - 4.3 Natural numbers in Isabelle/HOL

Chapter 4: Proof system for HOL (cont.)

- 5. Rewriting and simplification
- 6. Case analysis and structural induction
- 7. Proof automation
- 8. More proof methods
- » slides of Sessions 2, 3.1, 3.2, and 4 & 5 by T. Nipkow
- » Chapter 5 of Isabelle/HOL Tutorial til page 99

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Overall structure

Chapter 5: Sets, functions, relations, and fixpoints

- 1. Sets
- 2. Functions
- 3. Relations
- 4. Well-founded relations
- 5. Fixpoints
- » Chapter 6 of Isabelle/HOL Tutorial til page 118

Chapter 6: Verifying functions

- 1. Conceptual aspects
- 2. Case study: Gcd
- 3. Case study: Quicksort Shallow embedding of algorithms
- » theories for Gcd and Quicksort

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Chapter 7: Inductively defined sets

- 1. Defining sets inductively
- 2. Specification of transitions systems
 - 2.1 Transition systems
 - 2.2 Modeling: Case study Elevator
 - 2.3 Reasoning about finite transition systems
- » Section 7.1 of Isabelle/HOL Tutorial
- » slides of Sessions 6.1 T. Nipkow
- » theory for Elevator

(日)

Chapter 8: Specification of programming language semantics

- 1. Introduction to programming language semantics
- 2. Techniques to express semantics
 - 2.1 Natural semantics / big step semantics
 - 2.2 Structured operational semantics / small step semantics
 - 2.3 Denotational semantics
- 3. Formalizing semantics in HOL
- » slides about operational semantics by P. $M\tilde{A}\frac{1}{4}$ ller
- » theory for while-language

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Chapter 9: Program verification and programming logic

- 1. Hoare logic
- 2. Program verification based on language semantics
- 3. Program verification with Hoare logic
- 4. Soundness of Hoare logic
- » theory for while-language
- » theory for Hoare logic

Chapter 1

Introduction

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Overview

Overview

Motivation

- ► Specifications: Models and properties ~→ Spec-formalisms
- How do we express/specify facts? ~> Languages
- What is a proof? What is a formal proof? ~ Logical calculus
- How do we prove a specified fact? ~> Proof search
- ► Why formal? What is the role of a theorem prover? ~> Tools

Goals

- role of formal specifications
- recapitulate logic
- introduce/review basic concepts

口 医牙骨下的 法法 医医子宫

Role of formal Specifications

- Software and hardware systems must accomplish well defined tasks (requirements).
- Software Engineering has as goal
 - Definition of criteria for the evaluation of SW-Systems
 - Methods and techniques for the development of SW-Systems, that accomplish such criteria
 - Characterization of SW-Systems
 - Development processes for SW-Systems
 - Measures and Supporting Tools
- Simplified view of a SD-Process:

Definition of a sequence of actions and descriptions for the SW-System to be developed. Process- and Product-Models

Goal: The group of documents that includes an executable program.

-

Organisation, Overview

Introduction .

Motivation



・ロト ・ 日 ・ ・ 日 ・ ・ 日 ・ ・ 日

Comment

- First Specification: Global Specification
 Fundament for the Development
 "Contract or Agreement" between Developers and Client
- Intermediate (partial) specifications:
 Base of the Communication between Developers.
- Programs: Final products.

Development paradigms

- Structured Programming
- Design + Program
- Transformation Methods

▶ ...

< 口 > < 同 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Properties of Specifications

Consistency

Completeness

- Validation of the global specification regarding the requirements.
- Verification of intermediate specifications regarding the previous one.
- Verification of the programs regarding the specification.
- Verification of the integrated final system with respect to the global specification.
- Activities: Validation, Verification, Testing, Consistency- and Completeness-Check
- Tool support needed!

Requirements

- The global specification describes, as exact as possible, what must be done.
- Abstraction of the how Advantages
 - apriori: Reference document, compact and legible.
 - aposteriori: Possibility to follow and document design decisions traceability, reusability, maintenance.
- Problem: Size and complexity of the systems.

Principles to be supported

- Refinement principle: Abstraction levels
- Structuring mechanisms: Decomposition and modularization techniques
- Object orientation
- Verification and validation concepts

Requirements Description ~>> Specification Language

- Choice of the specification technique depends on the System.
 Frequently more than a single specification technique is needed.
 (What How).
- Type of Systems: Pure function oriented (I/O), reactive- embedded- real timesystems.
- Problem : Universal Specification Technique (UST) difficult to understand, ambiguities, tools, size ... e.g. UML
- Desired: Compact, legible and exact specifications

Here: functional specification techniques

-

・ロト ・ 同ト ・ ヨト ・ ヨト

Formal Specifications

- A specification in a formal specification language defines all the possible behaviors of the specified system.
- 3 Aspects: Syntax, Semantics, Inference System
 - Syntax: What's allowed to write: Text with structure, Properties often described by formulas from a logic, e.g equational logic.
 - ► Semantics: Which models are associated with the specification, ~→ Notion of models.
 - Inference System: Consequences (Derivation) of properties of the system. → Notion of consequence.

-

Formal Specifications

Two main classes:

Model oriented

(constructive) e.g.VDM, Z, ASM Construction of a non-ambiguous model from available data structures and construction rules Concept of correctness **Property oriented**

(declarative) signature (functions, predicates) Properties (formulas, axioms)

models algebraic specification AFFIRM, OBJ, ASF, HOL,...

- 4 回 ト 4 ヨ ト

 Operational specifications: Petri nets, process algebras, automata based (SDL).

3

・ロット (四) ・ (日) ・ (日) ・ (日)

Tool support

- Syntactic support (grammars, parser,...)
- Verification: theorem proving (proof obligations)
- Prototyping (executable specifications)
- Code generation (out of the specifications generate C code)
- Testing (from the specification generate test cases for the program)

Desired:

To generate the tools out of the syntax and semantics of the specification language

Example: declarative

Example 1.1. Restricted logic: e.g. equational logic

- Axioms: $\forall X \ t_1 = t_2$ t_1, t_2 terms.
- Rules: Equals are replaced with equals. (directed).
- ► Terms ≈ names for objects (identifier), structuring, construction of the object.
- ► Abstraction: Terms as elements of an algebra, term algebra.

・ 同 ト ・ ヨ ト ・ ヨ ト …

Formal Specifications

Stack: algebraic specification

Example 1.2. Elements of an algebraic specification: Signature (sorts (types), operation names with arities), Axioms (often only equations)

SPEC STACK USING NATURAL, BOOLEAN "Names of known SPECs" SORT stack "Principal type" OPS init : \rightarrow stack "Constant of the type *stack*, empty stack" push : stack nat \rightarrow stack pop : stack \rightarrow stack top : stack \rightarrow stack top : stack \rightarrow nat is_empty? : stack \rightarrow bool stack_error : \rightarrow stack nat_error : \rightarrow nat

(Signature fixed)

-

Formal Specifications

Axioms for Stack

FORALL s : stack n : nat AXIOMS is_empty? (init) = true is_empty? (push (s, n)) = false pop (init) = stack_error pop (push (s, n)) = s top (init) = nat_error top (push (s,n)) = n

Terms or expressions: top (push (push (init, 2), 3)) "means" 3

Semantics? Operationalization?

Apply equations as rules from left to right-----

Notion of rules and rewriting

Example: Sorting of lists over arbitrary types

Example 1.3.

	spec	ELEMENT
	use	BOOL
	sorts	elem
Formal :: <	ops	$. \leq .:$ elem, elem $ ightarrow$ bool
	eqns	$x \le x = $ true
		$imp(x \le y \text{ and } y \le z, x \le z) = true$
		$x \leq y$ or $y \leq x = $ true

Formal Specifications

Example (Cont.)

spec LIST[ELEMENT] use ELEMENT sorts list

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Example (Cont.)

```
eqns case(true, l_1, l_2) = l_1
case(false, l_1, l_2) = l_2
```

insert(x, nil) = x.nil $insert(x, y.l) = case(x \le y, x.y.l, y.insert(x, l))$

insertsort(nil) = nil
insertsort(x.l) = insert(x, insertsort(l))

sorted(nil) = true sorted(x.nil) = true sorted(x.y.l) = if $x \le y$ then sorted(y.l) else false

Property: sorted(insertsort(*I*)) = true

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Language: Syntax and Semantics

Syntax

Aspects of syntax

- used to designate things and express facts
- terms and formulas are formed from variables and function symbols
- function symbols map a tupel of terms to another term
- constant symbols: no arguments
- constant can be seen as functions with zero arguments
- predicate symbols are considered as boolean functions
- set of variables
Language: Syntax and Semantics



Example 1.4. Natural Numbers

- constant symbol: 0
- function symbol suc : $\mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{N}$
- function symbol plus : $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{N}$
- function symbol ...

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Syntax of propositional logic

Definition 1.5. Symbols

- $\mathcal{V} = \{a, b, c, \ldots\}$ is a set of propositional variables
- two function symbols: \neg and \rightarrow

Definition 1.6. Language

- each $P \in V$ is a formula
- if ϕ is a formula, then $\neg \phi$ is a formula
- if ϕ and ψ are formulas, then $\phi \rightarrow \psi$ is a formula

(日)

Semantics

Purpose

- syntax only specifies the structure of terms and formulas
- symbols and terms are assigned a meaning
- variables are assigned a value
- ▶ in particular, propositional variables are assigned a truth value

Bottom-Up Approach

- assignments give variables a value
- terms/formulas are evaluated based on the meaning of the function symbols

Interpretations/Structures

Definition 1.7. Assignment in Propositional Logic A variable assignment in propositionan logic is a mapping

► $I : \mathcal{V} \to \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$

Definition 1.8. Valuation of Propositional Logic

The valuation V takes an assignment I and a formula and yiels a true or false:

• if
$$\phi \in \mathcal{V}$$
: $V(\phi) = I(\phi)$

$$V(\neg \phi) = f_{\neg}(V(\phi))$$

$$\mathsf{V}(\phi \to \psi) = \mathsf{f}_{\to}(\mathsf{V}(\phi), \mathsf{V}(\psi))$$

where

f_		f_{\rightarrow}	false	true
false	true	false	true	true
true	false	true	false	true

Problem 1.9. Is V a well defined function?

Language: Syntax and Semantics

Validity

Definition 1.10. Validity of formulas in propositional logic

- a formula φ is valid if VIφ evaluates to true for all assigments I
- notation: $\models \phi$

Example 1.11. Tautology in Propositional Logic

•
$$\phi = a \lor \neg a$$
 (where $a \in \mathcal{V}$) is valid

- I(a) =false: $V(a \lor \neg a) =$ true
- $I(a) = \text{true: } V(a \lor \neg a) = \text{true}$

イロン イロン イヨン イヨン 二日 二

Syntactic Sugar

Purpose

- additions to the language that do not affect its expressiveness
- more practical way of description

Example 1.12. Abbreviations in Propositional Logic

- True denotes $\phi \rightarrow \phi$
- ► False denotes ¬True
- $\phi \lor \psi$ denotes $(\neg \phi) \to \psi$
- $\phi \land \psi$ denotes $\neg((\neg \phi) \lor (\neg \psi))$
- $\phi \leftrightarrow \psi$ denotes $((\phi \rightarrow \psi) \land (\psi \rightarrow \phi))$

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi: Introduction

General Concept

- purely syntactical manipulations based on designated transformation rules
- starting point: set of formulas, often a given set of axioms
- deriving new formulas by deduction rules from given formulas Γ
- φ is provable from Γ if φ can be obtained by a finite number of derivation steps assuming the formulas in Γ
- notation: $\Gamma \vdash \phi$ means ϕ is *provable* from Γ
- notation: $\vdash \phi$ means ϕ is *provable* from a given set of axioms

-

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi

Proof System Styles

Hilbert Style

- easy to understand
- hard to use

Natural Deduction

- easy to use
- hard to understand

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi

Hilbert-Style Deduction Rules

Definition 1.13. Deduction Rule

deduction rule d is a n + 1-tuple

$$\phi_1 \cdots \phi_n$$

 ψ

- formulas $\phi_1 \dots \phi_n$, called premises of rule
- formula ψ , called conclusion of rule

Hilbert-Style Proofs

Definition 1.14. Proof

- let D be a set of deduction rules, including the axioms as rules without premisses
- proofs in D are (natural) trees such that
 - axioms are proofs

► if
$$P_1, ..., P_n$$
 are proofs with roots $\phi_1 ... \phi_n$ and

$$\frac{\phi_1 \cdots \phi_n}{\psi}$$
 is in D, then

$$\frac{P_1 \cdots P_n}{\psi}$$
 is a proof in D

can also be written in a line-oriented style

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 [] 臣]

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi

Hilbert-Style Deduction Rules

Axioms

- ▶ let Γ be a set of axioms, ψ ∈ Γ, then $\overline{ψ}$ is a proof
- axioms allow to construct trivial proofs

Rule example

• Modus Ponens:
$$\frac{\phi \rightarrow \psi, \phi}{\psi}$$

 $\blacktriangleright\,$ if $\phi \rightarrow \psi$ and ϕ have already been proven, ψ can be deduced

イロン イロン イヨン イヨン 二日 二

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi

Proof Example

Example 1.15. Hilbert Proof

- ► language formed with the four proposition symbols P, Q, R, S
- axioms: $P, Q, Q \rightarrow R, P \rightarrow (R \rightarrow S)$



イロン イロン イヨン イヨン

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi

Hilbert Calculus for Propositional Logic

Definition 1.16. Axioms of Propositional Logic All instantiations of the following schemas:

$$\blacktriangleright A \to (B \to A)$$

$$\blacktriangleright (A \to (B \to C)) \to ((A \to B) \to (A \to C))$$

$$\blacktriangleright \ (\neg B \to \neg A) \to ((\neg B \to A) \to B)$$

Rules: All instantiations of modus ponens.

-

Natural Deduction

Motivation

- introducing a hypothesis is a natural step in a proof
- Hilbert proofs do not permit this directly
- $\blacktriangleright\,$ can be only encoded by using $\rightarrow\,$
- proofs are much longer and not very natural

Natural Deduction

- alternative definition where introduction of a hypothesis is a deduction rule
- deduction step can modify not only the proven propositions but also the assumptions Γ

(本間) (本臣) (本臣) (王臣)

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi

Natural Deduction Rules

Definition 1.17. Natural Deduction Rule

deduction rule d is a n + 1-tuple

$$\frac{\Gamma_1 \vdash \phi_1 \quad \cdots \quad \Gamma_n \vdash \phi_n}{\Gamma \vdash \psi}$$

- pairs of Γ (set of formulas) and ϕ (formulas): sequents
- proof: tree of sequents with rule instantiations as nodes

Natural Deduction Rules

Natural Deduction Rules

- rich set of rules
- elimination rules eliminate a logical symbol from a premise
- introduction rules introduce a logical symbol into the conclusion
- reasoning from assumptions
- Assumption Introduction, Assumption weakening:

(日)
 (日)

Proof Systems/Logical Calculi

Natural Deduction Rules

Definition 1.18. Natural Deduction Rules for Propositional Logic

V-introduction

$$\frac{\Gamma \vdash \phi}{\Gamma \vdash \phi \lor \psi} \qquad \frac{\Gamma \vdash \psi}{\Gamma \vdash \phi \lor \psi}$$

► ∨-elimination

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \Gamma \vdash \phi \lor \psi & \Gamma, \phi \vdash \xi & \Gamma, \psi \vdash \xi \\ \hline \Gamma \vdash \xi \end{array}$$

► →-introduction

$$\frac{ \mathsf{\Gamma}, \phi \vdash \psi}{\mathsf{\Gamma} \vdash \phi \to \psi}$$

→-elimination

$$\frac{\Gamma \vdash \phi \to \psi \qquad \Gamma \vdash \phi}{\Gamma \vdash \psi}$$

イロン イロン イヨン イヨン

Natural Deduction Example

Example 1.19.
$$\{A \rightarrow C, B \rightarrow C\} \vdash (A \lor B) \rightarrow C$$

$$\frac{\overline{\Gamma, A \vdash A \to C} \quad \overline{\Gamma, A \vdash A}}{\Gamma, A \vdash C} \quad \frac{\overline{\Gamma, A \vdash A}}{\Gamma, B \vdash C} \\
\frac{\overline{\Gamma := \{A \to C, B \to C, A \lor B\} \vdash C}}{\{A \to C, B \to C\} \vdash (A \lor B) \to C}$$

-2

Summary

・ロット (四) ・ (日) ・ (日) ・ (日)

Summary

Specification and verification

Algebraic specification - Functional specification

Theorem-Proving Fundamentals

- syntax: symbols, terms, formulas
- semantics: (mathematical structures,) variable assignments, denotations for terms and formulas
- proof system/(logical) calculus: axioms, deduction rules, proofs, theories

Fundamental Principle of Logic: "Establish truth by calculation" (APH, 2010)



- イロト (四) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日)

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Isabelle: Functional programming

Overview of Isabelle/HOL

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲目▶ ▲目》 三日 めんの

Isabelle: Functional programming

System Architecture

Isabelle

generic theorem prover

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

<ロト <回 > < 三 > < 三 ? 二 三 ·

Isabelle: Functional programming

System Architecture

Isabelle/HOL Isabelle instance for HOL

Isabelle

generic theorem prover

< 由 > < 部 > < 글 > < 글 ? - 글 ·

Isabelle: Functional programming

System Architecture

ProofGeneral	(X)Emacs based interface
Isabelle/HOL	Isabelle instance for HOL
Isabelle	generic theorem prover

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲目▶ ▲目》 三日 めんの

Isabelle: Functional programming

HOL

HOL = Higher-Order Logic

Isabelle: Functional programming

HOL

HOL = Higher-Order Logic HOL = Functional programming + Logic

イロン イロン イヨン イヨメー 注口

Isabelle: Functional programming

HOL

HOL = Higher-Order Logic HOL = Functional programming + Logic

HOL has

- datatypes
- recursive functions
- logical operators (\land , \longrightarrow , \forall , \exists , ...)

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三≯ 三三 - のへで

Isabelle: Functional programming

HOL

HOL = Higher-Order Logic HOL = Functional programming + Logic

HOL has

- datatypes
- recursive functions
- logical operators (\land , \longrightarrow , \forall , \exists , ...)

HOL is a programming language!

Isabelle: Functional programming

HOL

HOL = Higher-Order Logic HOL = Functional programming + Logic

HOL has

- datatypes
- recursive functions
- logical operators (\land , \longrightarrow , \forall , \exists , ...)

HOL is a programming language!

Higher-order = functions are values, too!

Syntax (in decreasing priority):

Syntax (in decreasing priority):

Examples

•
$$\neg A \land B \lor C \equiv ((\neg A) \land B) \lor C$$

イロト イロト イヨト イヨター ヨー

Syntax (in decreasing priority):

Examples

- $\neg A \land B \lor C \equiv ((\neg A) \land B) \lor C$
- $A = B \land C \equiv (A = B) \land C$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆目▶ ◆目▶ ◆□ ● のへの

Syntax (in decreasing priority):

Examples

• $\neg A \land B \lor C \equiv ((\neg A) \land B) \lor C$

•
$$A = B \land C \equiv (A = B) \land C$$

•
$$\forall x. P x \land Q x \equiv \forall x. (P x \land Q x)$$

Syntax (in decreasing priority):

Examples

• $\neg A \land B \lor C \equiv ((\neg A) \land B) \lor C$

•
$$A = B \land C \equiv (A = B) \land C$$

• $\forall x. Px \land Qx \equiv \forall x. (Px \land Qx)$

Scope of quantifiers: as far to the right as possible

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆目▶ ◆目▶ ◆□ ● のへの

Isabelle: Functional programming

Formulae

Abbreviation: $\forall x y. P x y \equiv \forall x. \forall y. P x y$

▲□▶▲□▶▲□▶▲□▶ ▲□▶ ■ のへで

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Isabelle: Functional programming

Formulae

Abbreviation: $\forall x y. P x y \equiv \forall x. \forall y. P x y$ ($\forall, \exists, \lambda, ...$)

▲□▶▲□▶▲目▶▲目》 目 のへの
Formulae

Abbreviation: $\forall x y. P x y \equiv \forall x. \forall y. P x y$ ($\forall, \exists, \lambda, ...$)

Parentheses:

• \land , \lor and \longrightarrow associate to the right: $A \land B \land C \equiv A \land (B \land C)$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆目▶ ◆目♪ ▲□ ● のへの

Formulae

Abbreviation: $\forall x y. P x y \equiv \forall x. \forall y. P x y$ ($\forall, \exists, \lambda, ...$)

Parentheses:

- \land , \lor and \longrightarrow associate to the right: $A \land B \land C \equiv A \land (B \land C)$
- $A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow C \equiv A \longrightarrow (B \longrightarrow C) \not\equiv (A \longrightarrow B) \longrightarrow C$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆目▶ ◆目♪ ▲□ ● のへの

Isabelle: Functional programming

Warning

Quantifiers have low priority and need to be parenthesized:

$$P \land \forall x. Q x \rightsquigarrow P \land (\forall x. Q x)$$

イロト イロト イヨト イヨア 三連一

Isabelle: Functional programming

Types and Terms

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲目▶ ▲目▶ ▲□ ● ● ●

Isabelle: Functional programming



Syntax:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \tau & ::= & (\tau) \\ & | & \textit{bool} \mid \textit{nat} \mid \dots & \text{base types} \end{array}$$

◆□ → ◆□ → ◆臣 → ◆臣 ≯ □臣 □

Isabelle: Functional programming

Types

Syntax:

base types type variables

イロト イロト イヨト イヨター ヨー

Isabelle: Functional programming

Types

Syntax:

$$\begin{aligned} \tau & ::= & (\tau) \\ & | & \textit{bool} | & \textit{nat} | \dots \\ & | & \textit{a} | & \textit{b} | \dots \\ & | & \tau \Rightarrow \tau \end{aligned}$$

base types type variables total functions

イロト イロト イヨト イヨター ヨー

Isabelle: Functional programming

Types

Syntax:

$$\tau ::= (\tau)$$

$$\mid bool \mid nat \mid \dots$$

$$\mid a \mid b \mid \dots$$

$$\mid \tau \Rightarrow \tau$$

$$\mid \tau \times \tau$$

base types type variables total functions pairs (ascii: *)

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲目▶ ▲目》 三日 のへの

Isabelle: Functional programming

Types

Syntax:

$$\tau ::= (\tau)$$

$$\mid bool \mid nat \mid \dots$$

$$\mid a \mid b \mid \dots$$

$$\mid \tau \Rightarrow \tau$$

$$\mid \tau \times \tau$$

$$\mid \tau \text{ list}$$

base types type variables total functions pairs (ascii: *) lists

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲目▶ ▲目》 三日 のへの

Isabelle: Functional programming

Types

Syntax:

$$\tau ::= (\tau)$$

$$\mid bool \mid nat \mid \dots$$

$$\mid a \mid b \mid \dots$$

$$\mid \tau \Rightarrow \tau$$

$$\mid \tau \times \tau$$

$$\mid \tau list$$

$$\mid \dots$$

base types type variables total functions pairs (ascii: *) lists user-defined types

・ロト ・ 御 ト ・ 臣 ト ・ 臣 別 一 臣 一

Types

Syntax:

$$\begin{aligned} \tau & ::= & (\tau) \\ & | \quad bool \mid nat \mid \dots & base types \\ & | \quad 'a \mid 'b \mid \dots & type variables \\ & | \quad \tau \Rightarrow \tau & total functions \\ & | \quad \tau \times \tau & pairs (ascii: *) \\ & | \quad \tau \text{ list} & lists \\ & | \quad \dots & user-defined types \end{aligned}$$

Parentheses: $T1 \Rightarrow T2 \Rightarrow T3 \equiv T1 \Rightarrow (T2 \Rightarrow T3)$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲目▶ ▲目》 三日 のへの

Terms: Basic syntax

Syntax:

term	::=	(term)	
		a	constant or variable (identifier)
		$term \ term$	function application
		$\lambda x. term$	function "abstraction"

<ロト <回 > < 三 > < 三 ? 二 三 ?

Terms: Basic syntax

Syntax:

term	::=	(term)	
		a	constant or variable (identifier)
		$term \ term$	function application
		$\lambda x. term$	function "abstraction"
			lots of syntactic sugar

<ロト <回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 ? 二 回 ?

Terms: Basic syntax

Syntax:

Isabelle: Functional programming

term	::=	(term)	
		a	constant or variable (identifier)
		$term \ term$	function application
		$\lambda x. term$	function "abstraction"
			lots of syntactic sugar

Examples: $f(g x) y = h(\lambda x. f(g x))$

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 ? 二 三 …

Terms: Basic syntax

Syntax:

Isabelle: Functional programming

term	::=	(term)	
		a	constant or variable (identifier)
		$term \ term$	function application
		$\lambda x. term$	function "abstraction"
			lots of syntactic sugar

Examples: $f(g x) y = h(\lambda x. f(g x))$ Parantheses: $f a_1 a_2 a_3 \equiv ((f a_1) a_2) a_3$

λ -calculus on one slide

Informal notation: t[x]

▲口▶▲圖▶▲臣▶▲臣幣 臣 のQ@

λ -calculus on one slide

Informal notation: t[x]

- Function application:
 - f a is the call of function f with argument a

-

イロト イワト イヨト イヨリー

λ -calculus on one slide

Informal notation: t[x]

Isabelle: Functional programming

• Function application:

f a is the call of function f with argument a

• Function abstraction:

 $\lambda x.t[x]$ is the function with formal parameter x and body/result t[x], i.e. $x \mapsto t[x]$.

λ -calculus on one slide

Informal notation: t[x]

Isabelle: Functional programming

• Function application:

f a is the call of function f with argument a

• Function abstraction:

 $\lambda x.t[x]$ is the function with formal parameter x and body/result t[x], i.e. $x \mapsto t[x]$.

Computation:

Replace formal by actual parameter (" β -reduction"): $(\lambda x.t[x]) \ a \longrightarrow_{\beta} t[a]$

λ -calculus on one slide

Informal notation: t[x]

• Function application:

f a is the call of function f with argument a

• Function abstraction:

 $\lambda x.t[x]$ is the function with formal parameter x and body/result t[x], i.e. $x \mapsto t[x]$.

Computation:

Replace formal by actual parameter (" β -reduction"): $(\lambda x.t[x]) \ a \longrightarrow_{\beta} t[a]$

Example:
$$(\lambda \ x. \ x+5) \ 3 \longrightarrow_{\beta} (3+5)$$

 \longrightarrow_{β} in Isabelle: Don't worry, be happy

Isabelle performs β -reduction automatically Isabelle considers $(\lambda x.t[x])a$ and t[a] equivalent

<ロト <回ト < 回ト < 回り < 回り = 三日

Terms and Types

Terms must be well-typed

(the argument of every function call must be of the right type)

Isabelle: Functional programming

・ロト ・御 ト ・ ヨト ・ ヨリー 三日

Terms and Types

Terms must be well-typed

(the argument of every function call must be of the right type)

Notation: $t := \tau$ means t is a well-typed term of type τ .

Isabelle: Functional programming

イロト イクト イヨト イヨリー 三

Type inference

Isabelle automatically computes ("*infers*") the type of each variable in a term.

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type inference

Isabelle automatically computes ("*infers*") the type of each variable in a term.

In the presence of *overloaded* functions (functions with multiple types) not always possible.

-

イロト イワト イヨト イヨサー

Type inference

Isabelle automatically computes ("*infers*") the type of each variable in a term.

In the presence of *overloaded* functions (functions with multiple types) not always possible.

User can help with type annotations inside the term.

Example: f (x::nat)

(日) (周) (王) (王) (王)

Isabelle: Functional programming



Thou shalt curry your functions

Currying

Thou shalt curry your functions

- Curried: $f :: \tau_1 \Rightarrow \tau_2 \Rightarrow \tau$
- Tupled: $f' :: \tau_1 \times \tau_2 \Rightarrow \tau$

Currying

Thou shalt curry your functions

- Curried: $f :: \tau_1 \Rightarrow \tau_2 \Rightarrow \tau$
- Tupled: $f' :: \tau_1 \times \tau_2 \Rightarrow \tau$

Advantage: *partial application f* a_1 with $a_1 :: \tau_1$

・ロト ・御 ト ・ ヨト ・ ヨリー ヨー

Terms: Syntactic sugar

Some predefined syntactic sugar:

- Infix: +, -, *, #, @, ...
- Mixfix: if _ then _ else _, case _ of, ...

イロト イ部ト イヨト イヨリー ヨー

Terms: Syntactic sugar

Some predefined syntactic sugar:

• Infix: +, -, *, #, @, ...

Isabelle: Functional programming

Mixfix: if _ then _ else _, case _ of, ...

Prefix binds more strongly than infix: $f x + y \equiv (f x) + y \not\equiv f (x + y)$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆臣▶ ◆臣幣 ―臣…

Terms: Syntactic sugar

Some predefined syntactic sugar:

• Infix: +, -, *, #, @, ...

Isabelle: Functional programming

Mixfix: if _ then _ else _, case _ of, ...

Prefix binds more strongly than infix:

 $f x + y \equiv (f x) + y \neq f (x + y)$

Enclose *if* and *case* in parentheses: *if _ then _ else _)*

イロト イボト イヨト イヨリー ヨー

Isabelle: Functional programming

Base types: bool, nat, list

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

< ロ > < 部 > < 표 > < 표 * - 표 ·

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type bool

Formulae = terms of type bool

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type bool

Formulae = terms of type bool

```
True :: bool
False :: bool
\land, \lor, \dots :: bool \Rightarrow bool \Rightarrow bool
:
```

イロト イ部ト イヨト イヨリー 注口

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type bool

Formulae = terms of type bool



if-and-only-if: =

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

イロト イ部ト イヨト イヨリー 注口
Isabelle: Functional programming

Type nat

```
0 :: nat
Suc :: nat \Rightarrow nat
+, *, ... :: nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat
:
```

<□> <□> <□> <□> < □> < □> < □> < □^{*} = ○へ ○

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type nat

```
0 :: nat

Suc :: nat \Rightarrow nat

+, *, ... :: nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat

:

Numbers and arithmetic operations are overloaded:

0,1,2,... :: 'a, +:: 'a \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a
```

You need type annotations: 1 :: nat, x + (y::nat)

イロト イ部ト イヨト イヨリー ヨー

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type nat

```
0 ::: nat

Suc :: nat \Rightarrow nat

+, *, ... :: nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat

:

Numbers and arithmetic operations are overloaded:

0, 1, 2, ... :: 'a, +:: 'a \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a

You need type annotations: 1 :: nat, x + (y::nat)
```

... unless the context is unambiguous: Suc z

イロト イボト イヨト イヨリー ヨー

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type list

- []: empty list
- x # xs: list with first element x ("head") and rest xs ("tail")
- Syntactic sugar: [x₁,...,x_n]

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type list

- []: empty list
- x # xs: list with first element x ("head") and rest xs ("tail")
- Syntactic sugar: [x₁,...,x_n]

Large library: hd, tl, map, length, filter, set, nth, take, drop, distinct, ...

> Don't reinvent, reuse! → HOL/List.thy

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ ? □ = -

Isabelle: Functional programming

Isabelle Theories

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲ 臣▶ ▲ 臣弊 - 臣 -

Theory = Module

Syntax: theory MyThimports $ImpTh_1 \dots ImpTh_n$ begin (declarations, definitions, theorems, proofs, ...)* end

- *MyTh*: name of theory. Must live in file *MyTh*.thy
- *ImpTh_i*: name of *imported* theories. Import transitive.

▲ □ ▶ ▲ □ ▶ ▲ 三 ▶ ▲ 三 2 → 三 三

Theory = Module

Syntax: theory MyThimports $ImpTh_1 \dots ImpTh_n$ begin (declarations, definitions, theorems, proofs, ...)* end

- MyTh: name of theory. Must live in file MyTh.thy
- *ImpTh_i*: name of *imported* theories. Import transitive.

Usually: theory MyTh imports Main

÷

▲ □ ▶ ▲ □ ▶ ▲ 三 ▶ ▲ 三 2 → 三 三

Isabelle: Functional programming

Proof General



An Isabelle Interface

by David Aspinall

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

3

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三 ?? …

Proof General

Customized version of (x)emacs:

• all of emacs (info: C-h i)

Isabelle: Functional programming

- Isabelle aware (when editing .thy files)
- mathematical symbols ("x-symbols")

<ロト < 回 ト < 巨 ト < 巨 24 三 三 -

X-Symbols

Input of funny symbols in Proof General

- via menu ("X-Symbol")
- via ascii encoding (similar to LTEX): \<and>, \<or>, ...
- via abbreviation: /\, \/, -->, ...

x-symbol	A	Э	λ	7	\wedge	\vee	\longrightarrow	\Rightarrow
ascii (1)	\ <forall></forall>	\ <exists></exists>	\ <lambda></lambda>	$\langle < not >$	\sim	$\backslash/$	>	=>
ascii (2)	ALL	EX	90	~	&	_		

(1) is converted to x-symbol, (2) stays ascii.

Isabelle: Functional programming

Demo: terms and types

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆臣 ▶ ◆臣 29 □ 臣 □

An introduction to recursion and induction

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆ 臣 ▶ ◆ 臣 27 □ 臣 □

A recursive datatype: toy lists

datatype 'a list = Nil | Cons 'a ('a list)

A recursive datatype: toy lists

```
datatype 'a list = Nil | Cons 'a ('a list)
Nil: empty list
Cons x xs: head x :: 'a, tail xs :: 'a list
```

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三部 二三

A recursive datatype: toy lists

```
datatype 'a list = Nil | Cons 'a ('a list)
Nil: empty list
Cons x xs: head x :: 'a, tail xs :: 'a list
A toy list: Cons False (Cons True Nil)
```

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ * □ = *

A recursive datatype: toy lists

```
datatype 'a list = Nil | Cons 'a ('a list)
Nil: empty list
Cons x xs: head x :: 'a, tail xs :: 'a list
A toy list: Cons False (Cons True Nil)
Predefined lists: [False, True]
```

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ * □ = *

Structural induction on lists

P xs holds for all lists xs if

Structural induction on lists

P xs holds for all lists xs if

• P Nil

Structural induction on lists

P xs holds for all lists xs if

- P Nil
- and for arbitrary x and xs, P xs implies P (Cons x xs)

A recursive function: append

Definition by primitive recursion:

primrec app :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where app Nil ys = ? | app (Cons x xs) ys = ??

A recursive function: append

Definition by *primitive recursion*:

primec app :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where app Nil ys = ? | app (Cons x xs) ys = ??

1 rule per constructor Recursive calls must drop the constructor \implies Termination

Isabelle: Functional programming

Concrete syntax

In . thy files: Types and formulas need to be inclosed in "

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 * 一里 :

Concrete syntax

In . thy files: Types and formulas need to be inclosed in "

Except for single identifiers, e.g. 'a

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲臣▶ ★臣幣 二臣。

Concrete syntax

In . thy files: Types and formulas need to be inclosed in "

Except for single identifiers, e.g. 'a

" normally not shown on slides

Isabelle: Functional programming

・ロト ・部ト ・ヨト ・ヨペー 正

Demo: append and reverse

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic



General schema:

```
lemma name: "..."
apply (...)
apply (...)
:
done
```

If the lemma is suitable as a simplification rule:

```
lemma name[simp]: "..."
```

・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・
 ・

Proof methods

Structural induction

- Format: (induct x)
 x must be a free variable in the first subgoal.
 The type of x must be a datatype.
- Effect: generates 1 new subgoal per constructor

Simplification and a bit of logic

- Format: auto
- Effect: tries to solve as many subgoals as possible using simplification and basic logical reasoning.

Top down proofs

Command

sorry

"completes" any proof.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < Ξ > < Ξ ³⁵ Ξ

Top down proofs

Command

Isabelle: Functional programming

sorry

"completes" any proof.

Allows top down development:

Assume lemma first, prove it later.

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 > < 三 ³⁵ 三 二

Isabelle: Functional programming

Some useful tools

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 39 回 回 1

Disproving tools

Automatic counterexample search by random testing: *quickcheck*

Disproving tools

Automatic counterexample search by random testing: *quickcheck*

Counterexample search via SAT solver: *nitpick*

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Isabelle: Functional programming

< ロ > < 部 > < 글 > < 글 ³ - 글 -

Finding theorems

- 1. Click on Find button
- 2. Input search pattern (e.g. "_ & True")

Demo: Disproving and Finding

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

<ロト < (回) < ((0) > (((0) > ((0) > ((()) > (((0) > ((()) > (((

Isabelle: Functional programming

Isabelle's meta-logic

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic
Basic constructs

Implication \implies (==>)

For separating premises and conclusion of theorems

Basic constructs

Implication \implies (==>) For separating premises and conclusion of theorems Equality \equiv (==) For definitions

Isabelle: Functional programming

Basic constructs

Implication \implies (==>) For separating premises and conclusion of theorems Equality \equiv (==) For definitions Universal quantifier \land (!!) For binding local variables

Isabelle: Functional programming

<ロト < 部 ト < 三 ト < 三 4 二 三

Basic constructs

Implication \implies (==>) For separating premises and conclusion of theorems Equality \equiv (==) For definitions Universal quantifier \land (!!) For binding local variables Do not use *inside* HOL formulae

Isabelle: Functional programming

<ロト < 同ト < ヨト < ヨ4 三

Notation

 $\llbracket A_1; \ldots; A_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow B$

abbreviates

 $A_1 \Longrightarrow \ldots \Longrightarrow A_n \Longrightarrow B$

Isabelle: Functional programming

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲臣▶ ▲臣祭 - 臣 - のへで

Functional Programming:Isabelle

Isabelle: Functional programming

Notation

 $\llbracket A_1; \dots; A_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow B$ abbreviates $A_1 \Longrightarrow \dots \Longrightarrow A_n \Longrightarrow B$; ~~ "and"

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲臣▶ ▲臣祭 - 臣 - のへで

The proof state

- 1. $\land \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_p$. $\llbracket \mathbf{A}_1; \dots; \mathbf{A}_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \mathbf{B}$
- $x_1 \dots x_p$ Local constants $A_1 \dots A_n$ Local assumptions B Actual (sub)goal

▲□▶ ▲御▶ ▲臣▶ ★臣49 三臣・

Type and function definition in Isabelle/HOL

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 * 一座。

Type definition in Isabelle/HOL

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 * 二 = *

Introducing new types

Keywords:

- typedecl: pure declaration
- types: abbreviation
- datatype: recursive datatype

typedecl

typedecl name

Introduces new "opaque" type name without definition

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

typedecl

typedecl name

Introduces new "opaque" type name without definition

Example:

typedecl addr — An abstract type of addresses

<ロ> <回> <回> <三> <三? <三? <三? <三? <三? <三? <0<</p>

Functional Programming:Isabelle

Isabelle: Functional programming



types $name = \tau$

Introduces an *abbreviation* name for type τ

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ * □ = *



types $name = \tau$

Introduces an *abbreviation* name for type τ

Examples:

types

name = string('a, 'b)foo = 'a list × 'b list

イロト イボト イヨト イヨダー ヨー

types

types $name = \tau$

Introduces an *abbreviation* name for type τ

Examples:

types

Isabelle: Functional programming

name = string('a, 'b)foo = 'a list × 'b list

Type abbreviations are expanded immediately after parsing Not present in internal representation and Isabelle output

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ * □ = *

Functional Programming:Isabelle

Isabelle: Functional programming

datatype

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

The example

datatype 'a list = Nil | Cons 'a ('a list)

Properties:

- Types: Nil :: 'a list Cons :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list
- Distinctness: Nil ≠ Cons x xs
- Injectivity: (Cons x xs = Cons y ys) = ($x = y \land xs = ys$)

<ロ> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日</p>

The general case

datatype
$$(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)\tau$$
 = $C_1 \tau_{1,1} \dots \tau_{1,n_1}$
 $| \dots$
 $| C_k \tau_{k,1} \dots \tau_{k,n_k}$

- Types: $C_i :: \tau_{i,1} \Rightarrow \cdots \Rightarrow \tau_{i,n_i} \Rightarrow (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \tau$
- Distinctness: $C_i \ldots \neq C_j \ldots$ if $i \neq j$
- Injectivity: $(C_i \ x_1 \dots x_{n_i} = C_i \ y_1 \dots y_{n_i}) = (x_1 = y_1 \wedge \dots \wedge x_{n_i} = y_{n_i})$

< □ > < □ > < 三 > < 三 ? = ? < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ ? < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

The general case

datatype
$$(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)\tau = C_1 \tau_{1,1} \dots \tau_{1,n_1}$$

 $| \dots$
 $| C_k \tau_{k,1} \dots \tau_{k,n_k}$

- Types: $C_i :: \tau_{i,1} \Rightarrow \cdots \Rightarrow \tau_{i,n_i} \Rightarrow (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \tau$
- Distinctness: $C_i \ldots \neq C_j \ldots$ if $i \neq j$
- Injectivity: $(C_i \ x_1 \dots x_{n_i} = C_i \ y_1 \dots y_{n_i}) = (x_1 = y_1 \wedge \dots \wedge x_{n_i} = y_{n_i})$

Distinctness and Injectivity are applied automatically Induction must be applied explicitly

1

< □ > < □ > < 三 > < 三 ? = ? < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ ? < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Function definition in Isabelle/HOL

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆臣▶ ◆臣孥 三臣。

Why nontermination can be harmful

How about f x = f x + 1?

Why nontermination can be harmful

How about f x = f x + 1?

Subtract f x on both sides.

 $\implies 0 = 1$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Why nontermination can be harmful

How about f x = f x + 1?

Subtract f x on both sides.

Isabelle: Functional programming

 $\implies 0 = 1$

All functions in HOL must be total

Function definition schemas in Isabelle/HOL

Non-recursive with definition
 No problem

Function definition schemas in Isabelle/HOL

- Non-recursive with definition
 No problem
- Primitive-recursive with primrec Terminating by construction

-

< ロ > < 四 > < 三 > < 三 ⁵

Function definition schemas in Isabelle/HOL

- Non-recursive with definition
 No problem
- Primitive-recursive with **primrec** Terminating by construction
- Well-founded recursion with fun Automatic termination proof

3

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲臣▶ ▲臣歸……

Function definition schemas in Isabelle/HOL

- Non-recursive with definition
 No problem
- Primitive-recursive with **primrec** Terminating by construction
- Well-founded recursion with fun Automatic termination proof
- Well-founded recursion with function User-supplied termination proof

▲ 同 ▶ ▲ 国 ▶ ▲ 国 54

Functional Programming:Isabelle

Isabelle: Functional programming

definition

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Definition (non-recursive) by example

definition sq :: nat \Rightarrow nat where sq $n = n^* n$

definition prime :: nat \Rightarrow bool where prime p = (1

Isabelle: Functional programming

definition prime :: nat \Rightarrow bool where prime p = (1

Not a definition: free *m* not on left-hand side

Isabelle: Functional programming

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆臣▶ ◆臣孥 三臣。

definition prime :: nat \Rightarrow bool where prime p = (1

Not a definition: free *m* not on left-hand side

Every free variable on the rhs must occur on the lhs

Isabelle: Functional programming

< ロ > < 同 > < 国 > < 国 ? 三 :

definition prime :: nat \Rightarrow bool where prime p = (1

Not a definition: free *m* not on left-hand side

Every free variable on the rhs must occur on the lhs

prime p = (1

Isabelle: Functional programming

Using definitions

Definitions are not used automatically

Using definitions

Definitions are not used automatically

Unfolding the definition of sq:

apply(unfold sq_def)

Functional Programming:Isabelle

Isabelle: Functional programming

primrec

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三)
The example

primrec app :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where app Nil ys = ys | app (Cons x xs) ys = Cons x (app xs ys)

The general case

If τ is a datatype (with constructors C_1, \ldots, C_k) then $f :: \cdots \Rightarrow \tau \Rightarrow \cdots \Rightarrow \tau'$ can be defined by *primitive recursion*: $f x_1 \ldots (C_1 y_{1,1} \ldots y_{1,n_1}) \ldots x_p = r_1 |$ \vdots $f x_1 \ldots (C_k y_{k,1} \ldots y_{k,n_k}) \ldots x_p = r_k$

Isabelle: Functional programming

< 口 > < 部 > < 글 > < 포함 - 포 -

The general case

If τ is a datatype (with constructors C_1, \ldots, C_k) then $f :: \cdots \Rightarrow \tau \Rightarrow \cdots \Rightarrow \tau'$ can be defined by *primitive recursion*: $f x_1 \ldots (C_1 y_{1,1} \ldots y_{1,n_1}) \ldots x_p = r_1 |$: $f x_1 \ldots (C_k y_{k,1} \ldots y_{k,n_k}) \ldots x_p = r_k$

The recursive calls in r_i must be *structurally smaller*, i.e. of the form $f a_1 \dots y_{i,j} \dots a_p$

Isabelle: Functional programming

< 口 > < 部 > < 글 > < 포함 - 포 -

nat is a datatype

datatype nat = 0 | Suc nat

▲□▶▲圖▶▲臣▶▲臣幣 臣 のへで

nat is a datatype

datatype nat = 0 | Suc nat

Functions on nat definable by primrec!

```
primrec f :: nat \Rightarrow ...
f 0 = ...
f(Suc n) = ... f n ...
```

More predefined types and functions

-

Type option

datatype 'a option = None | Some 'a

Isabelle: Functional programming

Type option

datatype 'a option = None | Some 'a

Important application:

 $\ldots \Rightarrow$ 'a option \approx partial function:

None \approx no result

Some $a \approx$ result a

< □ > < □ > < 三 > < 三 * = * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ *

Type option

datatype 'a option = None | Some 'a

Important application:

Isabelle: Functional programming

 $\ldots \Rightarrow$ 'a option \approx partial function:

None \approx no result *Some a* \approx result *a*

Example: primrec lookup :: 'k \Rightarrow ('k \times 'v) list \Rightarrow 'v option where

< □ > < □ > < 三 > < 三 * = * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ *

Type option

datatype 'a option = None | Some 'a

Important application:

Isabelle: Functional programming

 $\dots \Rightarrow$ 'a option \approx partial function: None \approx no result Some $a \approx$ result a

Example: primrec lookup :: ' $k \Rightarrow$ (' $k \times$ 'v) list \Rightarrow 'v option where lookup k [] = None

< □ > < □ > < 三 > < 三 * = * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ * < □ *

Type option

datatype 'a option = None | Some 'a

Important application:

Isabelle: Functional programming

 $\ldots \Rightarrow$ 'a option \approx partial function:

None \approx no result Some a \approx result a

Example: primrec lookup :: $k \Rightarrow (k \times v)$ list $\Rightarrow v$ option where lookup k [] = None | lookup k (x#xs) = (if fst x = k then Some(snd x) else lookup k xs)

(日)
 (日)



Datatype values can be taken apart with case expressions:

(case xs of [] \Rightarrow ... | y#ys \Rightarrow ... y ... ys ...)

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲臣▶ ▲臣幣 三臣 -

Datatype values can be taken apart with case expressions:

(case xs of [] \Rightarrow ... | y#ys \Rightarrow ... y ... ys ...)

Wildcards:

(case xs of []
$$\Rightarrow$$
 [] | y#_ \Rightarrow [y])

Datatype values can be taken apart with case expressions:

(case xs of [] \Rightarrow ... | y#ys \Rightarrow ... y ... ys ...)

Wildcards:

(case xs of []
$$\Rightarrow$$
 [] | y#_ \Rightarrow [y])

Nested patterns:

(case xs of [0] \Rightarrow 0 | [Suc n] \Rightarrow n | $_$ \Rightarrow 2)

< □ > < □ > < 三 > < 三 ¹ = ¹ < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Datatype values can be taken apart with case expressions:

(case xs of [] \Rightarrow ... | y#ys \Rightarrow ... y ... ys ...)

Wildcards:

(case xs of []
$$\Rightarrow$$
 [] | y#_ \Rightarrow [y])

Nested patterns:

(case xs of [0] \Rightarrow 0 | [Suc n] \Rightarrow n | $_$ \Rightarrow 2)

Complicated patterns mean complicated proofs!

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲臣▶ ▲臣幣 三臣 -

Datatype values can be taken apart with case expressions:

(case xs of [] \Rightarrow ... | y#ys \Rightarrow ... y ... ys ...)

Wildcards:

(case xs of []
$$\Rightarrow$$
 [] | y#_ \Rightarrow [y])

Nested patterns:

(case xs of [0] \Rightarrow 0 | [Suc n] \Rightarrow n | _ \Rightarrow 2)

Complicated patterns mean complicated proofs!

Needs () in context

< □ > < □ > < 三 > < 三 ¹ = ¹ < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Proof by case distinction

If $t :: \tau$ and τ is a datatype apply(case_tac t)

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Proof by case distinction

If $t :: \tau$ and τ is a datatype apply(case_tac t) creates k subgoals

 $t = C_i \ x_1 \dots x_p \Longrightarrow \dots$

one for each constructor C_i of type τ .

Isabelle: Functional programming

Isabelle: Functional programming

Demo: trees

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ = - < □ = -

fun

From primitive recursion to arbitrary pattern matching

3

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三 ⁶

Example: Fibonacchi

fun *fib :: nat* \Rightarrow *nat* where

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ ?</p>

Example: Separation

```
fun sep :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where
```

Isabelle: Functional programming

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ ? - □ :

Example: Ackermann

fun $ack :: nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat$ where

Isabelle: Functional programming

 $\begin{array}{ll} ack \ 0 & n & = Suc \ n \ | \\ ack \ (Suc \ m) \ 0 & = ack \ m \ (Suc \ 0) \ | \\ ack \ (Suc \ m) \ (Suc \ n) = ack \ m \ (ack \ (Suc \ m) \ n) \end{array}$

Key features of fun

Arbitrary pattern matching

Key features of fun

Arbitrary pattern matching

Isabelle: Functional programming

Order of equations matters

-

Key features of fun

- Arbitrary pattern matching
- Order of equations matters
- Termination must be provable by lexicographic combination of size measures

3

Isabelle: Functional programming



• size(n::nat) = n

Isabelle: Functional programming



- *size(n::nat) = n*
- size(xs) = length xs

<ロト <回 > < 三 > < 三 ? 三 ? 三 ? 三 ? 二 三 ?

Isabelle: Functional programming



- *size(n::nat) = n*
- size(xs) = length xs
- size counts number of (non-nullary) constructors

イロト イ部ト イヨト イヨネー ヨー

Lexicographic ordering

Either the first component decreases, or it stays unchanged and the second component decreases:

-

< ロ > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 ? -

Lexicographic ordering

Either the first component decreases, or it stays unchanged and the second component decreases:

 $(5,3) > (4,7) > (4,6) > (4,0) > (3,42) > \cdots$

< 口 > < 部 > < 글 > < 글 ? ... 글 ? ... 그는 ...

Lexicographic ordering

Either the first component decreases, or it stays unchanged and the second component decreases:

$$(5,3) > (4,7) > (4,6) > (4,0) > (3,42) > \cdots$$

Similar for tuples:

 $(5,6,3) > (4,12,5) > (4,11,9) > (4,11,8) > \cdots$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆臣▶ ◆臣雅 - 臣・

Lexicographic ordering

Either the first component decreases, or it stays unchanged and the second component decreases:

$$(5,3) > (4,7) > (4,6) > (4,0) > (3,42) > \cdots$$

Similar for tuples:

Isabelle: Functional programming

 $(5, 6, 3) > (4, 12, 5) > (4, 11, 9) > (4, 11, 8) > \cdots$

Theorem If each component ordering terminates, then their *lexicographic product* terminates, too.

Ackermann terminates

ack 0 n = Suc nack (Suc m) 0 = ack m (Suc 0) ack (Suc m) (Suc n) = ack m (ack (Suc m) n)

Isabelle: Functional programming

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 ? 二 正 …

Ackermann terminates

ack 0 n = Suc n

Isabelle: Functional programming

ack (Suc m) 0 = ack m (Suc 0)

ack (Suc m) (Suc n) = ack m (ack (Suc m) n)

because the arguments of each recursive call are lexicographically smaller than the arguments on the lhs.

Ackermann terminates

ack 0 n = Suc n

Isabelle: Functional programming

ack (Suc m) 0 = ack m (Suc 0)

ack (Suc m) (Suc n) = ack m (ack (Suc m) n)

because the arguments of each recursive call are lexicographically smaller than the arguments on the lhs.

Note: order of arguments not important for Isabelle!

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 更 7 二 更
Computation Induction

If $f :: \tau \Rightarrow \tau'$ is defined by fun, a special induction schema is provided to prove P(x) for all $x :: \tau$:

Isabelle: Functional programming

Computation Induction

If $f :: \tau \Rightarrow \tau'$ is defined by fun, a special induction schema is provided to prove P(x) for all $x :: \tau$:

for each equation f(e) = t, prove P(e) assuming P(r) for all recursive calls f(r) in t.

Isabelle: Functional programming

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 * - 三 * - 三 *

Computation Induction

If $f :: \tau \Rightarrow \tau'$ is defined by fun, a special induction schema is provided to prove P(x) for all $x :: \tau$:

for each equation f(e) = t, prove P(e) assuming P(r) for all recursive calls f(r) in t.

Induction follows course of (terminating!) computation

Isabelle: Functional programming

<ロト < 同ト < ヨト < ヨ⁷⁹ ヨ

Isabelle: Functional programming

Computation Induction: Example

fun div2 :: nat \Rightarrow nat where div2 0 = 0 | div2 (Suc 0) = 0 | div2(Suc(Suc n)) = Suc(div2 n)

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆臣▶ ◆臣死 →臣。

Isabelle: Functional programming

Computation Induction: Example

fun div2 :: nat \Rightarrow nat where div2 0 = 0 | div2 (Suc 0) = 0 | div2(Suc(Suc n)) = Suc(div2 n)

→ induction rule div2.induct:

$$\frac{P(0) \quad P(Suc \ 0) \quad P(n) \Longrightarrow P(Suc(Suc \ n))}{P(m)}$$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆臣▶ ◆臣死 二臣。

Functional Programming:Isabelle

Isabelle: Functional programming

Demo: fun

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

イロト イ部ト イヨト イヨ門 三三一



- イロト (四) (三) (三) (三) (つ) (つ)

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

OL:Introduction	
IOL:Introduction	



- Stands for Higher Order Logic
- Denotes both a logic and a system
- Logic is an evolution of Alonzo Church's Simple Theory of Types (1940)
- System is an evolution of LCF (1979)
- Intent of this lecture: give an overview of HOL

HOL:Introduction

Introduction to HOL

The Language of Higher Order Logic

The HOL system

Some Logical History

- Frege was a logicist (math is a subset of logic)
- Proposed a system on which (he thought) all mathematics could be derived (in principle)
- Bertrand Russell found paradox in Frege's system
- Proposed the Ramified Theory of Types
- Wrote Principia Mathematica with Whitehead
- An attempt at developing basic mathematics completely formally

"My intellect never recovered from the strain"

HOL:Introduction



Definition

A set *s* does not contain itself if $s \notin s$

Fact

Consider $X = \{s \mid s \notin s\}$. X is the set of all sets that do not contain themselves.

- If $X \in X$ then X does not contain itself, i.e., $X \notin X$
- If $X \notin X$ then X contains itself, i.e., $X \in X$

So $X \in X$ iff $X \notin X$. Contradiction.

• Gottlob, we have a problem!

HOL:Introduction			
	Introduction to HOL	The Language of Higher Order Logic	The HOL system
Type Theory			

- Problem: even allowing the expression of the notion of sets that do not contain themselves leads to contradiction
- One solution: ban such self-referential expressions (so-called *vicious circles*)
- Russell's proposal: invent a hierarchy of types
- Elements of lower types could not be applied to elements of higher types
- Blocks the paradox because X ∈ X no longer a well-formed expression

	Introduction
1	

Introduction to HOL	The Language of Higher Order Logic	The HOL system
	Type Theories	

- Russell's Ramified Theory of Types was very complex
- Simplified by Frank Ramsey in 1920s
- A. Church used typed λ-calculus to give a sleek presentation (Simple Theory of Types 1940)
- An earlier attempt by Church used untyped λ-calculus as a foundation for mathematics. It was inconsistent.
- HOL is a version of Church's 1940 logic.
- Many other variants as well, e.g., Calculus of Constructions

HOL:Introduction



- · Late 1960's : Dana Scott's Domain Theory
- Logic of Computable Functions: a (first order) logic for Scott's theory
- Implemented in Edinburgh LCF (mid-1970s)
- Early 1980's : Mike Gordon swapped Scott's logic for Church's
- Kept much of LCF implementation

HOL:Introduction

Introduction to HOL

"he Language of Higher Order Logic

The HOL system

Contemporary Implementations of HOL

- HOL-Light (Harrison)
- HOL-4 (Gordon, Slind, Norrish, others)
- Isabelle/HOL (Paulson,Nipkow)
- ProofPower (Arthan)
- reFLect (Intel)

Related systems:

- PVS (extension of Church's logic with dependent types and subtypes)
- ACL2 (built on Common Lisp subset)
- MIZAR (Tarski-Grothendieck set theory)

HOL:Introduction

Introduction to HOL The Language of Higher Order Logic The HOL system
Page of Logic Implementations

For a collection of logic implementations see

http://www.cs.ru.nl/~freek/digimath/index.html

616

Motivation

- Higher-order logic (HOL) is an expressive foundation for mathematics: analysis, algebra, . . .
 computer science: program correctness, hardware verification, . . .
- Reasoning in HOL is classical.
- Still important: modeling of problems (now in HOL).
- Still important: deriving relevant reasoning principles.



617

Motivation (2)

- HOL offers safety through strength:
 - $\circ\,$ small kernel of constants and axioms;
 - $\circ\,$ Safety via conservative (definitional) extensions.
- Contrast with
 - weak logics (e.g., propositional logic): can't define much;
 - \circ axiomatic extensions: can lead to inconsistency

Bertrand Russell once likened the advantages of postulation over definition to the advantages of theft over honest toil!

(rev. 12275)

イロト イヨト イヨト -

-

618

Alternatives to Isabelle/HOL

- We will use and focus on Isabelle/HOL.
- Could forgo the use of a meta-logic and employ alternatives, e.g., HOL system or PVS. Or use constructive alternatives such as Coq or Nuprl.
- Choice depends on culture and application.

(rev. 12275)

イロン イロン イヨン イヨン

-

619

Which Foundation?

- Set theory is often seen as the basis for mathematics.
 - ∘ Zermelo-Fraenkel, Bernays-Gödel, . . .
 - $\circ\,$ Set theories (both) distinguish between sets and classes.
 - Consistency maintained as some collections are "too big" to be sets, e.g., class of all sets is not a set. A class cannot belong to another class (let alone a set)!
- HOL as an alternative (Church 1940, Henkin 1950).
 - $\circ~\mbox{Rationale:}$ one usually works with typed entities.
 - Isabelle/HOL also supports like polymorphism and type classes. HOL is weaker than ZF set theory, but for most applications this does not matter. If you prefer ML to Lisp, you will probably prefer HOL to ZF.
- Another alternative: category theory (Eilenberg, Mac Lane)

620

Meaning of "Higher Order"

1st-order: quantification over individuals (0th-order objects).

$$\forall x, \ y. \ R(x, y) \longrightarrow R(y, x)$$

2nd-order: quantification over predicates and functions.

$$\begin{array}{lll} false & \equiv & \forall P. \ P \\ P \wedge Q & \equiv & \forall R. \ (P \longrightarrow Q \longrightarrow R) \longrightarrow R \end{array} \end{array}$$

3rd-order: quantify over variables whose arguments are predicates.

I

"higher order" \longleftrightarrow union of all finite orders

(rev. 12275)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

621

Basic HOL Syntax (1)

• Types:

$$\tau \ ::= \ bool \mid ind \mid \tau \Rightarrow \tau$$

 \circ bool and ind are also called o and i in literature [Chu40, And86]

 $\circ\,$ Isabelle allows definitions of new type constructors, e.g., $\mathit{list}(\mathit{bool})$

 $\circ\,$ Isabelle supports polymorphic type definitions, e.g., $list(\alpha)$

• Terms: $(\mathcal{V} \text{ set of variables and } \mathcal{C} \text{ set of constants})$

 $\mathcal{T} ::= \mathcal{V} \mid \mathcal{C} \mid (\mathcal{T}\mathcal{T}) \mid \lambda \mathcal{V}. \mathcal{T}$

 $\circ\,$ Terms are simply-typed.

 $\circ\,$ Terms of type bool are called (well-formed) formulae.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

⁽rev. 12275)

622

Basic HOL Syntax (2)

• Constants are always supplied with types and include:

True, False : bool

- $_=_: \tau \Rightarrow \tau \Rightarrow bool \qquad (for all types \tau)$
- $_ \longrightarrow _: bool \Rightarrow bool \Rightarrow bool$ $\iota_: (\tau \Rightarrow bool) \Rightarrow \tau \qquad (for all types \tau)$
- Note that the description operator *if* yields the unique element x for which f x is *True*, provided it exists. Otherwise, it yields an arbitrary value.
- Note that in Isabelle, the provisos "for all types τ " can be expressed by using polymorphic type variables α .

⁽rev. 12275)

623

HOL Semantics

- Intuitively an extension of many-sorted semantics with functions
 - $\circ\,$ FOL: structure is domain and functions/relations

 $\langle \mathcal{D}, (f_i)_{i \in F}, (r_i)_{i \in R} \rangle$

 $\circ\,$ Many-sorted FOL: domains are sort-indexed

 $\langle (\mathcal{D}_i)_{i\in S}, (f_i)_{i\in F}, (r_i)_{i\in R} \rangle$

 \circ HOL extends idea: domain ${\cal D}$ is indexed by (infinitely many) types

• Our presentation ignores polymorphism on the object-logical level, it is treated on the meta-level, though (a version covering object-level parametric polymorphism is [GM93]).

(rev. 12275)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

-

624

Model Based on Universe of Sets $\ensuremath{\mathcal{U}}$ Definition 1 (Universe):

 $\ensuremath{\mathcal{U}}$ is a collection of sets, fulfilling closure conditions:

Inhab: Each $X \in \mathcal{U}$ is a nonempty set

Sub: If $X \in \mathcal{U}$ and $Y \neq \emptyset \subseteq X$, then $Y \in \mathcal{U}$

Prod: If $X, Y \in \mathcal{U}$ then $X \times Y \in \mathcal{U}$.

 $X \times Y$ is Cartesian product, $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$ encodes (x, y)

Pow: If $X \in \mathcal{U}$ then $\mathcal{P}(X) = \{Y : Y \subseteq X\} \in \mathcal{U}$

Infty: \mathcal{U} contains a distinguished infinite set I

(rev. 12275)

625

Universe of Sets \mathcal{U} (cont.)

• Function space:

- $X \Rightarrow Y$ is the set of (graphs of all total) functions from X to Y
- $\circ\,$ For X and Y nonempty, $X\Rightarrow Y$ is a nonempty subset of $\mathcal{P}(X\times Y)$

 \circ From closure conditions: $X, Y \in \mathcal{U}$ then so is $X \Rightarrow Y$.

• Distinguished sets:

from Infty and Sub there is (at least one) set

Unit: A distinguished 1 element set $\{1\}$

Bool: A distinguished 2 element set $\{T, F\}$.

イロン イロン イヨン イヨン

⁽rev. 12275)

Definition 2 (Frame):

A frame is a collection $(\mathcal{D}_{\alpha})_{\alpha\in\tau}$ with $\mathcal{D}_{\alpha}\in\mathcal{U}$, for $\alpha\in\tau$ and

- $\mathcal{D}_{bool} = \{T, F\}$
- $\mathcal{D}_{ind} = X$ where X is some infinite set of individuals
- $\mathcal{D}_{\alpha \Rightarrow \beta} \subseteq \mathcal{D}_{\alpha} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{\beta}$, i.e., some collection of functions from D_{α} to D_{β}

Example: $\mathcal{D}_{bool \Rightarrow bool}$ is some nonempty subset of functions from $\{T, F\}$ to $\{T, F\}$. Some of these subsets contain, e.g., the identity function, others do not.

・ロト ・ 同ト ・ ヨト ・ ヨト - 「三

⁽rev. 12275)

627

Definition 3 (Interpretation):

An interpretation $\langle (\mathcal{D}_{\alpha})_{\alpha \in \tau}, \mathcal{J} \rangle$ consists of a frame $(\mathcal{D}_{\alpha})_{\alpha \in \tau}$ and a denotation function \mathcal{J} mapping each constant of type α to an element of \mathcal{D}_{α} where:

- $\mathcal{J}(\mathit{True}) = T$ and $\mathcal{J}(\mathit{False}) = F$
- $\mathcal{J}(=_{\alpha\Rightarrow\alpha\Rightarrow\mathit{bool}})$ is the identity on \mathcal{D}_{α}
- $\mathcal{J}(\longrightarrow)$ denotes the implication function over $\mathcal{D}_{\textit{bool}},$ i.e.,

$$b \rightarrow b' = \begin{cases} F & \text{if } b = T \text{ and } b' = F \\ T & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

• $\mathcal{J}(\iota_{(\alpha\Rightarrow bool)\Rightarrow\alpha}) \in (\mathcal{D}_{\alpha} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{bool}) \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{\alpha}$ denotes the function $the(f) = \begin{cases} a & \text{if } f = (\lambda x.x = a) \\ y & \text{otherwise } (y \in \mathcal{D}_{\alpha} \text{ is arbitrary}) \end{cases}$

(rev. 12275)

Definition 4 (Generalized Models):

An interpretation $\mathfrak{M} = \langle (\mathcal{D}_{\alpha})_{\alpha \in \tau}, \mathcal{J} \rangle$ is a (general) model for HOL iff there is a binary function $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}$ such that

- for all type-indexed families of substitutions $\sigma = (\sigma_{\alpha})_{\alpha \in \tau}$ and terms t of type α , $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, t) \in \mathcal{D}_{\alpha}$, and
- for all type-indexed families of substitutions σ = (σ_α)_{α∈τ},
 (a) V^m(σ, x_α) = σ_α(x_α)

(b)
$$\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, c) = \mathcal{J}(c)$$
, for c a (primitive) constant

(c)
$$\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, s_{\alpha \Rightarrow \beta} t_{\alpha}) = \mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, s) \mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, t)$$

i.e., the value of the function $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, s)$ at the argument $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, t)$

(d)
$$\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\lambda x_{\alpha}.t_{\beta}) =$$
 "the function from \mathcal{D}_{α} into \mathcal{D}_{β} whose value for
each $z \in \mathcal{D}_{\alpha}$ is $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma[x \leftarrow z], t)$ "

(rev. 12275)

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

629

Generalized Models - Facts (1)

- If m is a general model and σ a substitution, then V^m(σ,t) is uniquely determined, for every term t. V^m(σ,t) is value of t in m w.r.t. σ.
- Gives rise to the standard notion of satisfiability/validity: \circ We write $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}, \sigma \models \phi$ for $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, \phi) = T$.
 - $\circ \ \phi \text{ is satisfiable in } \mathfrak{M} \text{ if } \mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}, \sigma \models \phi \text{, for some substitution } \sigma.$
 - $\circ \phi$ is valid in \mathfrak{M} if $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}, \sigma \models \phi$, for every substitution σ .
 - $\circ~\phi$ is valid (in the general sense) if ϕ is valid in every general model $\mathfrak{M}.$

イロト イヨト イヨト -

⁽rev. 12275)

630

Generalized Models - Facts (2)

- Not all interpretations are general models.
- Closure conditions guarantee every well-formed formula has a value under every assignment, e.g.,

closure under functions: identity function from \mathcal{D}_{α} to \mathcal{D}_{α} must belong to $\mathcal{D}_{\alpha \Rightarrow \alpha}$ so that $\mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, \lambda x_{\alpha}, x)$ is defined. closure under application:

- $\circ\,$ if \mathcal{D}_N is set of natural numbers and
- $\circ \ \mathcal{D}_{N \Rightarrow N \Rightarrow N}$ contains addition function p where $p \, x \, y = x + y$
- $\label{eq:constraint} \begin{array}{l} \circ \mbox{ then } \mathcal{D}_{N \Rightarrow N} \mbox{ must contain } k \: x = 2x + 5 \\ \mbox{ since } k = \mathcal{V}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\sigma, \lambda x. \: f(f \: x \: x) \: y) \mbox{ where } \sigma(f) = p \mbox{ and } \sigma(y) = 5. \end{array}$

(rev. 12275)

<ロ> <回> <回> <回> <三> <三</p>

631

Standard Models

Definition 5 (Standard Models):

A general model is a standard model iff for all $\alpha, \beta \in \tau$, $\mathcal{D}_{\alpha \Rightarrow \beta}$ is the set of all functions from \mathcal{D}_{α} to \mathcal{D}_{β} .

- A standard model is a general model, but not necessary vice versa.
- Analogous definitions for satisfiability and validity w.r.t. standard models.

(rev. 12275)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

631

Standard Models

Definition 5 (Standard Models):

A general model is a standard model iff for all $\alpha, \beta \in \tau$, $\mathcal{D}_{\alpha \Rightarrow \beta}$ is the set of all functions from \mathcal{D}_{α} to \mathcal{D}_{β} .

- A standard model is a general model, but not necessary vice versa.
- Analogous definitions for satisfiability and validity w.r.t. standard models.
- We can now re-introduce HOL in Isabelle's meta-logic.

(rev. 12275)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

632

Isabelle/HOL

The syntax of the core-language is introduced by:

consts

Not	$:: bool \Rightarrow bool$	("¬_" [40] 40)
True	:: bool	
False	:: bool	
lf	:: [bool, 'a, 'a] \Rightarrow 'a	$("(if _ then _ else _)")$
The	:: ('a \Rightarrow bool) \Rightarrow 'a	(binder "THE "10)
All	:: (' a \Rightarrow bool) \Rightarrow bool	(binder "∀ " 10)
Ex	:: (' a \Rightarrow bool) \Rightarrow bool	(binder "∃ " 10)
=	:: ['a, 'a] \Rightarrow bool	(infixl 50)
\wedge	:: [bool, bool] \Rightarrow bool	(infixr 35)
\vee	:: [bool, bool] \Rightarrow bool	(infixr 30)
\longrightarrow	:: [bool, bool] \Rightarrow bool	(infixr 25)



イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

-

633

The Axioms of HOL (1)

axioms

ext: "
$$(\Lambda x. f x = g x) \Longrightarrow (\lambda x. f x) = (\lambda x. g x)$$
"

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \operatorname{impl:} & & "(P \Longrightarrow Q) \Longrightarrow P \longrightarrow Q' \\ \operatorname{mp:} & & "\llbracket P \longrightarrow Q; P \rrbracket \Longrightarrow Q" \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{iff}: & "(P \longrightarrow Q) \longrightarrow (Q \longrightarrow P) \longrightarrow (P=Q)" \\ \text{True_or_False}: & "(P=\text{True}) \lor (P=\text{False})" \end{array}$$

the_eq_trivial : "(THE x.
$$x = a$$
) = (a::'a)"

(rev. 12275)

Higher-order Logic: Foundations

634

The Axioms of HOL (2)

Additionally, there is:

- universal α , β , and η congruence on terms (implicitly),
- the axiom of infinity, and
- the axiom of choice (Hilbert operator).
- This is the entire basis!

(rev. 12275)

《曰》《卽》《臣》《臣》

-

635

Core Definitions of HOL

defs

True_def:	True	$\equiv ((\lambda x::bool. x) = (\lambda x. x))$
All_def :	All (P)	\equiv (P = (λ x. True))
Ex_def:	Ex(P)	$\equiv \forall Q. (\forall x. P x \longrightarrow Q) \longrightarrow Q$
False_def :	False	\equiv (\forall P. P)
not_def:	¬Ρ	$\equiv P \longrightarrow False$
and_def:	$P\wedgeQ$	$\equiv \forall R. (P \longrightarrow Q \longrightarrow R) \longrightarrow R$
or_def :	$P \lor Q$	$\equiv \forall R. (P \longrightarrow R) \longrightarrow (Q \longrightarrow R) \longrightarrow R$
if_def :	lf P×y	\equiv THE z::'a. (P=True \longrightarrow z=x) \land
		$(P=False \longrightarrow z=y)$

(rev. 12275)
636

Meta-theoretic Properties of HOL Theorem 1 (Soundness of HOL, [And86]): HOL is sound w.r.t. to general models. $\vdash_{HOL} \phi$ implies ϕ is valid Theorem 2 (Completeness of HOL, [And86]): • HOL is complete w.r.t. to general models. ϕ is valid implies $\vdash_{HOL} \phi$ • HOL is complete w.r.t. to standard models. Theorem 3 (HOL with infinity, [And86]): • HOL+infinity is complete w.r.t. general models.

• HOL+infinity is incomplete w.r.t. standard models.

イロン イロン イヨン イヨン

-

⁽rev. 12275)

637

Conclusions

- HOL generalizes semantics of FOL
 - $\circ \ bool \ {\rm serves}$ as type of propositions
 - $\,\circ\,$ Syntax/semantics allows for higher-order functions
- Logic is rather minimal: 8 rules, more-or-less obvious
- Logic is very powerful in terms of what we can represent/derive.
 - \circ Other "logical" syntax
 - Rich theories via conservative extensions (topic for next few weeks!)

(rev. 12275)

イロト イヨト イヨト -

-

638

Bibliography

- M. J. C. Gordon and T. F. Melham, Introduction to HOL: A theorem proving environment for higher order logic, Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- Peter B. Andrews, An Introduction to Mathematical Logic and Type Theory: To Truth Through Proof, Academic Press, 1986.
- Tobias Nipkow and Lawrence C. Paulson and Markus Wenzel, Isabelle/HOL — A Proof Assistant for Higher-Order Logic, Springer-Verlag, LNCS 2283, 2002.

⁽rev. 12275)

1190

References

- [Acz77] Peter Aczel. Handbook of Mathematical Logic, chapter An Introduction to Inductive Definitions, pages 739–782. North-Holland, 1977.
- [And86] Peter B. Andrews. An Introduction to Mathematical Logic and Type Theory: To Truth Through Proofs. Academic Press, 1986.
- [BN98] Franz Baader and Tobias Nipkow. Term Rewriting and All That. Cambridge University Press, 1998.
- [Chu40] Alonzo Church. A formulation of the simple theory of types. Journal of Symbolic Logic, 5:56–68, 1940.
- [Gen35] Gerhard Gentzen. Untersuchungen über das logische Schliessen. Mathematische Zeitschrift, 39:176–210, 405–431, 1935. English translation in [Sza69].

No Short Title

(rev. 12275)

《曰》《卽》《臣》《臣》

-

1191

- [GLT89] Jean-Yves Girard, Yves Lafont, and Paul Taylor. Proofs and Types. Cambridge University Press, 1989.
- [GM93] Michael J. C. Gordon and Tom F. Melham, editors. Introduction to HOL. Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- [HHPW96] Cordelia V. Hall, Kevin Hammond, Simon L. Peyton Jones, and Philipp Wadler. Type classes in Haskell. ACM Transactions on Programming Languages and Systems, 18(2):109–138, 1996.
- [Höl90] Steffen Hölldobler. Conditional equational theories and complete sets of transformations. *Theoretical Computer Science*, 75(1&2):85–110, 1990.
- [Klo93] Jan Willem Klop. Handbook of Logic in Computer Science, chapter "Term Rewriting Systems". Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1993.
- [LP81] Harry R. Lewis and Christos H. Papadimitriou. Elements of the Theory of Computation. Prentice-Hall, 1981.

No Short Title

(rev. 12275)

・ロト ・ 同ト ・ ヨト ・ ヨト - 「三

Higher-order	Logic:	Found	ations
inglici oraci	LOBIC.	i ouniu	arions

1192

- [Mil78] Robin Milner. A theory of type polymorphism in programming. Journal of Computer and System Sciences, 17(3):348–375, 1978.
- [Nip93] Tobias Nipkow. Logical Environments, chapter Order-Sorted Polymorphism in Isabelle, pages 164–188. Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- [NN99] Wolfgang Naraschewski and Tobias Nipkow. Type inference verified: Algorithm W in isabelle/hol. Journal of Automated Reasoning, 23(3-4):299–318, 1999.
- [Pau96] Lawrence C. Paulson. *ML for the Working Programmer*. Cambridge University Press, 1996.
- [Pau03] Lawrence C. Paulson. The Isabelle Reference Manual. Computer Laboratory, University of Cambridge, March 2003.
- [PM68] Dag Prawitz and Per-Erik Malmnäs. A survey of some connections between classical, intuitionistic and minimal logic. In A. Schmidt and H. Schütte, ed-

No Short Title

(rev. 12275)

Higher-order Logic: Foundations

1193

itors, *Contributions to Mathematical Logic*, pages 215–229. North-Holland, 1968.

- [Pra65] Dag Prawitz. Natural Deduction: A proof theoretical study. Almqvist and Wiksell, 1965.
- [Sza69] M. E. Szabo. The Collected Papers of Gerhard Gentzen. North-Holland, 1969.
- [Tho95] Simon Thompson. Miranda: The Craft of Functional Programming. Addison-Wesley, 1995.
- [Tho99] Simon Thompson. Haskell: The Craft of Functional Programming. Addison-Wesley, 1999. Second Edition.
- [vD80] Dirk van Dalen. Logic and Structure. Springer-Verlag, 1980. An introductory textbook on logic.
- [Vel94] Daniel J. Velleman. How to Prove It. Cambridge University Press, 1994.

No Short Title

(rev. 12275)

《曰》《卽》《臣》《臣》

-

1194

- [vH67] Jean van Heijenoort, editor. From Frege to Gödel: A Source Book in Mathematical Logic, 1879-193. Harvard University Press, 1967. Contains translations of original works by David Hilbert.
- [WB89] Phillip Wadler and Stephen Blott. How to make ad-hoc polymorphism less ad-hoc. In Conference Record of the 16th ACM Symposium on Principles of Programming Languages, pages 60–76, 1989.
- [WR25] Alfred N. Whitehead and Bertrand Russell. Principia Mathematica, volume 1. Cambridge University Press, 1925. 2nd edition.

Computer-supported Modeling and Reasoning WS 06/07http://www.infsec.ethz.ch/education,

HOL:Conservative extensions

Higher-order Logic: Conservative Extensions

▲□▶▲圖▶▲≣▶▲≣▶ 厘 のQの

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Outline

In the previous lecture, we have derived all well-known inference rules. There is now the need to scale up. Today we look at conservative theory extensions, an important method for this purpose.

In the weeks to come, we will look at how mathematics is encoded in the Isabelle/HOL library.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

Conservative Theory Extensions: Basics

Terminology and basic definitions (c.f. [GM93]):

Definition 6 (theory):

A (syntactic) theory T is a triple (χ, Σ, A) , where χ is a type signature, Σ a signature, and A a set of axioms.

Definition 7 (consistent):

A theory T is consistent iff False is not provable in T.

Definition 8 (theory extension):

A theory $T' = (\chi', \Sigma', A')$ is an extension of a theory $T = (\chi, \Sigma, A)$ iff $\chi \subseteq \chi'$ and $\Sigma \subseteq \Sigma'$ and $A \subseteq A'$.

(rev. 32934)

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Definitions (Cont.)

Definition 9 (conservative extension):

A theory extension $T' = (\chi', \Sigma', A')$ of a theory $T = (\chi, \Sigma, A)$ is conservative iff for the set of provable formulas Th we have

$$Th(T) = Th(T') \mid_{\Sigma},$$

where $|_{\Sigma}$ filters away all formulas not belonging to Σ . Counterexample:

$$\overline{\forall f :: \alpha \Rightarrow \alpha. \ Y f = f(Y f)} \ ^{\text{fb}}$$

(rev. 32934)

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨト

Consistency Preserved

Lemma 1 (consistency):

If T^\prime is a conservative extension of a consistent theory T, then

 $False \notin Th(T').$

(rev. 32934)

<ロ> <回> <回> <回> <回> <回> <回> <回> <回> <回</p>

Syntactic Schemata for Conservative Extensions

- Constant definition
- Type definition
- Constant specification
- Type specification

Will look at first two schemata now.

For the other two see [GM93].

(rev. 32934)

《曰》《圖》《臣》《臣》

Ŀ

Constant Definition

Definition 10 (constant definition):

A theory extension $T' = (\chi', \Sigma', A')$ of a theory $T = (\chi, \Sigma, A)$ is a constant definition, iff

• $\chi' = \chi$ and $\Sigma' = \Sigma \cup \{c :: \tau\}$, where $c \notin dom(\Sigma)$;

•
$$A' = A \cup \{c = E\};$$

- E does not contain c and is closed;
- no subterm of E has a type containing a type variable that is not contained in the type of c.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨト

Constant Definitions are Conservative Lemma 2 (constant definitions):

A constant definition is a conservative extension.

Proof Sketch:

- $Th(T) \subseteq Th(T') \mid_{\Sigma}$: trivial.
- $Th(T) \supseteq Th(T') \mid_{\Sigma}$: let π' be a proof for $\phi \in Th(T') \mid_{\Sigma}$. We unfold any subterm in π' that contains c via c = E into π . π is a proof in T, i.e., $\phi \in Th(T)$.

(rev. 32934)

Side Conditions

Where are those side conditions needed? What goes wrong? Simple example: Let $E \equiv \exists x :: \alpha$. $\exists y :: \alpha$. $x \neq y$ and suppose σ is a type inhabited by only one term, and τ is a type inhabited by at least two terms. Then we would have:

$$c = c \qquad \text{holds by refl} \\ \implies (\exists x :: \sigma. \exists y :: \sigma. x \neq y) = (\exists x :: \tau. \exists y :: \tau. x \neq y) \\ \implies False = True \\ \implies False$$

Reconsider the definition of True.

(rev. 32934)

Constant Definition: Examples

Recall that All(P) is equivalent to $\forall x$. P x and Ex(P) is equivalent to $\exists x$. P x.

(rev. 32934)

More Constant Definitions in Isabelle

let-**in**-, if -then-else, unique existence:

consts

Let ::: ['a, 'a
$$\Rightarrow$$
 'b] \Rightarrow 'b
If :: [bool, 'a, 'a] \Rightarrow 'a
Ex1 ::: ('a \Rightarrow bool) \Rightarrow bool

defs

Let_def: "Let s f
$$\equiv$$
 f(s)"
if_def: "If P x y \equiv THE z::'a.(P=True \rightarrow z=x) \land
(P=False \rightarrow z=y)"
Ex1_def: "Ex1(P) $\equiv \exists x. P(x) \land (\forall y. P(y) \rightarrow y=x)$ "
Note: \Rightarrow is function type arrow; recall syntax for [...] \Rightarrow ...

(rev. 32934)

・ロト ・ 同ト ・ ヨト ・ ヨト - 「ヨ

Type Definitions

Type definitions, explained intuitively: we have

- an existing type r;
- a predicate $S :: r \Rightarrow bool$, defining a non-empty "subset" of r;
- axioms stating an isomorphism between S and the new type t.



(rev. 32934)

《曰》《卽》《臣》《臣》

701

Type Definition: Definition

Definition 11 (type definition):

Assume a theory $T = (\chi, \Sigma, A)$ and a type r and a term S of type $r \Rightarrow bool$. A theory extension $T' = (\chi', \Sigma', A')$ of T is a type definition for type t (where t fresh), iff

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \chi' &=& \chi & \mbox{ } \{t\}, \\ \Sigma' &=& \Sigma & \cup & \{Abs_t :: r \Rightarrow t, Rep_t :: t \Rightarrow r\} \\ A' &=& A & \cup & \{\forall x.Abs_t(Rep_t x) = x, \\ & \forall x.S \ x \longrightarrow Rep_t(Abs_t x) = x\} \end{array}$$
Proof obligation $T \vdash \exists x.S \ x \ (\text{inside HOL})$

(rev. 32934)

702

Type Definitions are Conservative

Lemma 3 (type definitions):

A type definition is a conservative extension. Proof see [GM93, pp.230].

(rev. 32934)

・ロト ・回ト ・ヨト ・ヨト

703

HOL is Rich Enough!

This may seem fishy: if a new type is always isomorphic to a subset of an existing type, how is this construction going to lead to a "rich" collection of types for large-scale applications?

But in fact, due to ind and \Rightarrow , the types in HOL are already very rich.

We now give three examples revealing the power of type definitions.

(rev. 32934)

< ロ > < 同 > < 回 > < 回 > .

Example: Typed Sets

General scheme, substituting $r \equiv \alpha \Rightarrow bool$ (α is any type variable), $t \equiv \alpha \ set$ (or set), $S \equiv \lambda x :: \alpha \Rightarrow bool$. True

Simplification since $S \equiv \lambda x$. True. Proof obligation: $(\exists x. S x)$ trivial since $(\exists x. True) = True$. Inhabitation is crucial!

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト

705

Sets: Remarks

Any function $f :: \tau \Rightarrow bool$ can be interpreted as a set of τ ; f is called characteristic function. That's what $Abs_{set} f$ does; Abs_{set} is a wrapper saying "interpret f as set". $S \equiv \lambda x. True$ and so S is trivial in this case.

(rev. 32934)

・ロト ・回ト ・ヨト ・ヨト

More Constants for Sets

For convenient use of sets, we define more constants:

$$\{x \mid f x\} \cong Collect \ f = Abs_{set} f x \in A = (Rep_{set} A) x A \cup B = \{x \mid x \in A \lor x \in B\}$$

Consistent set theory adequate for most of mathematics and computer science !

Here, sets are just an example to demonstrate type definitions. Later we study them for their own sake.

(rev. 32934)

Example: Pairs

Consider type $\alpha \Rightarrow \beta \Rightarrow bool$. We can regard a term $f :: \alpha \Rightarrow \beta \Rightarrow bool$ as a representation of the pair (a, b), where $a :: \alpha$ and $b :: \beta$, iff f x y is true exactly for x = a and y = b. Observe:

- For given a and b, there is exactly one such f (namely, $\lambda x :: \alpha. \ \lambda y :: \beta. \ x = a \land y = b$).
- Some functions of type α ⇒ β ⇒ bool represent pairs and others don't (e.g., the function λx. λy. True does not represent a pair). The ones that do are are equal to λx :: α. λy :: β. x = a ∧ y = b, for some a and b.

(rev. 32934)

Type Definition for Pairs

This gives rise to a type definition where S is non-trivial:

$$\begin{aligned} r &\equiv \alpha \Rightarrow \beta \Rightarrow bool \\ S &\equiv \lambda f :: \alpha \Rightarrow \beta \Rightarrow bool. \\ &\exists a. \exists b. f = \lambda x :: \alpha. \lambda y :: \beta. x = a \land y = b \\ t &\equiv \alpha \times \beta \end{aligned}$$
 (× infix)

It is convenient to define a constant Pair_Rep (not to be confused with Rep_{\times}) as follows: Pair_Rep a b = $\lambda x ::'a$. $\lambda y ::'b$. x=a $\wedge y=b$.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨト

709

Implementation in Isabelle

Isabelle provides a special syntax for type definitions:

How is this linked to our scheme:

- the new type is called T';
- r is the type of x (inferred);
- S is $\lambda x. A x$;
- \bullet constants Abs_T and Rep_T are automatically generated.

(rev. 32934)

《曰》《卽》《臣》《臣》

710

Isabelle Syntax for Pair Example

constdefs

Pair_Rep :: ['a, 'b] \Rightarrow ['a, 'b] \Rightarrow bool "Pair_Rep $\equiv (\lambda \ a \ b. \ \lambda \ x \ y. \ x=a \land y=b)$ " typedef (Prod) ('a, 'b) "*" (infixr 20)

= "{f. \exists a. \exists b. f=Pair_Rep(a::'a)(b::'b)}"

The keyword constdefs introduces a constant definition. The definition and use of Pair_Rep is for convenience. There are "two names" * and Prod.

See Product_Type.thy.

(rev. 32934)

Example: Sums

An element of (α, β) sum is either InI a ::' a or Inr b ::' b. Consider type $\alpha \Rightarrow \beta \Rightarrow bool \Rightarrow bool$. We can regard $f :: \alpha \Rightarrow \beta \Rightarrow bool \Rightarrow bool$ as a representation of . . . | iff f x y i is true for . . . Inl a | x = a, y arbitrary, and i = TrueInr b | x arbitrary, y = b, and i = False. Similar to pairs.

(rev. 32934)

《曰》《卽》《臣》《臣》

Isabelle Syntax for Sum Example

constdefs

See Sum_Type.thy.

Exercise: How would you define a type even based on nat?

(rev. 32934)

・ロト ・ 同ト ・ ヨト ・ ヨト

-	D C	1.1.1
lype	Defir	ntions

Summary

- We have presented a method to safely build up larger theories:
 - Constant definitions;
 - $\circ\,$ Type definitions.
- Subtle side conditions.
- A new type must be isomorphic to a "subset" of an existing type.

(rev. 32934)

・ロト ・回ト ・ヨト ・ヨト

HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations

714

More Detailed Explanations

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト イヨト

э

Axioms or Rules

Inside Isabelle, axioms are thm's, and they may include Isabelle's metalevel implication \implies . For this reason, it is not required to mention rules explicitly.

But speaking more generally about HOL, not just its Isabelle implementation, one should better say "rules" here, i.e., objects with a horizontal line and zero or more formulas above the line and one formula below the line.

(rev. 32934)

(日)

HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations

716

Provable Formulas

The provable formulas are terms of type *bool* derivable using the inference rules of HOL and the empty assumption list. We write Th(T) for the derivable formulas of a theory T.

(rev. 32934)
HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations

717

Closed Terms

A term is closed or ground if it does not contain any free variables.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

э

More Detailed Explanations

718

Definition of *True* Is Type-Closed

True is defined as $\lambda x :: bool. x = \lambda x. x$ and not $\lambda x :: \alpha.x = \lambda x. x$. The definition must be type-closed.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

719

Fixpoint Combinator

Given a function $f : \alpha \Rightarrow \alpha$, a fixpoint of f is a term t such that f t = t. Now Y is supposed to be a fixpoint combinator, i.e., for any function f, the term Y f should be a fixpoint of f. This is what the rule

$$\overline{\forall f :: \alpha \Rightarrow \alpha. Y f = f(Y f)} \stackrel{\text{fis}}{\to}$$

says. Consider the example $f \equiv \neg$. Then the axiom allows us to infer $Y(\neg) = \neg(Y(\neg))$, and it is easy to derive *False* from this. This axiom is a standard example of a non-conservative extension of a theory. This inconsistency is not surprising: Not every function has a fixpoint, so there cannot be a combinator returning a fixpoint of any function. Nevertheless, fixpoints are important and must be realized in some way, as we will see later.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

720

Side Conditions

By side conditions we mean

- E does not contain c and is closed;
- no subterm of *E* has a type containing a type variable that is not contained in the type of *c*;

in the definition.

The second condition also has a name: one says that the definition must be type-closed.

The notion of having a type is defined by the type assignment calculus. Since E is required to be closed, all variables occurring in E must be λ -bound, and so the type of those variables is given by the type superscripts.

(rev. 32934)

イロト 不得下 イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

721

Domains of Σ , Γ

The domain of Σ , denoted $dom(\Sigma)$, is $\{c \mid (c :: A) \in \Sigma \text{ for some } A\}$. Likewise, the domain of Γ , denoted $dom(\Gamma)$, is $\{x \mid (x :: A) \in \Gamma \text{ for some } A\}$. Note the slight abuse of notation.

(rev. 32934)

More Detailed Explanations

722

constdefs

In Isabelle theory files, consts is the keyword preceding a sequence of constant declarations (i.e., this is where the Σ is defined), and defs is the keyword preceding the constant definitions defining these constants (i.e., this is where the A is defined.

constdefs combines the two, i.e. it allows for a sequence of both constant declarations and definitions, and the theorem identifier c_def is generated automatically. E.g.

constdefs

id :: "'a
$$\Rightarrow$$
 'a"
"id $\equiv \lambda \times \times$ "

will bind id_def to $id \equiv \lambda x.x$.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

HOL:Foundations

HOL:Conservative extensions



S

Here, S is any "predicate", i.e., a term of type $r \Rightarrow \mathit{bool},$ not necessarily a constant.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト -

HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations	724	
Fresh t		
The type constructor t must not occur in χ .		
	(rev. 32934)	
	・ロン・ロン・ロン・	ą.

What Is t?

We use the letter χ to denote the set of type constructors (where the arity and fixity is indicated in some way). So since $t \in \chi'$, we have that t should be a type constructor. However, we abuse notation and also use t for the type obtained by applying the type constructor t to a vector of different type variables (as many as t requires).

(rev. 32934)

イロト 不得下 イヨト イヨト

IOL:Foundations	
000000000000000000000000000000000000000	>00000000000000000000000000000000000000

More Detailed Explanations	726
Ĥ	
The symbol \boxplus denotes disjoint union, so the expression $A \uplus B$ is well-formed only when A and B have no elements in common.	

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

What Are Abs_t and Rep_t ?

Of course we are giving a schematic definition here, so any letters we use are meta-notation.

Notice that Abs_t and Rep_t stand for new constants. For any new type t to be defined, two such constants must be added to the signature to provide a generic way of obtaining terms of the new type. Since the new type is isomorphic to the "subset" S, whose members are of type r, one can say that Abs_t and Rep_t provide a type conversion between (the subset S of) r and t.

イロト 不得下 イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations

728

Isomorphism

The formulas

$$\begin{aligned} &\forall x.Abs_t(Rep_t \, x) = x \\ &\forall x.S \, x \longrightarrow Rep_t(Abs_t \, x) = x \end{aligned}$$

state that the "set" S and the new type t are isomorphic. Note that Abs_t should not be applied to a term not in "set" S. Therefore we have the premise Sx in the above equation.

Note also that S could be the "trivial filter" λx . True. In this case, Abs_t and Rep_t would provide an isomorphism between the entire type r and the new type t.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

729

Proof Obligation

We have said previously that S should be a non-empty "subset" of t. Therefore it must be proven that $\exists x.\,S\,x.$ This is related to the semantics.

Whenever a type definition is introduced in Isabelle, the proof obligation must be shown inside Isabelle/HOL. Isabelle provides the typedef syntax for type definitions, as we will see later.

(rev. 32934)

イロト 不得下 イヨト イヨト

Inhabitation in the set Example

We have $S \equiv \lambda x :: \alpha \Rightarrow bool$. True, and so in $(\exists x.Sx)$, the variable x has type $\alpha \Rightarrow bool$. The proposition $(\exists x.Sx)$ is true since the type $\alpha \Rightarrow bool$ is inhabited, e.g. by the term $\lambda x :: \alpha$. True or $\lambda x :: \alpha$. False. Beware of a confusion: This does not mean that the new type α set, defined by this construction, is the type of non-empty sets. There is a term for the empty set: The empty set is the term Abs_{set} ($\lambda x. False$). Recall a previous argument for the importance of inhabitation.

(rev. 32934)

イロト 不得下 イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

Trivial S

We said that in the general formalism for defining a new type, there is a term S of type $r \Rightarrow bool$ that defines a "subset" of a type r. In other words, it filters some terms from type r. Thus the idea that a predicate can be interpreted as a set is present in the general formalism for defining a new type.

Now we are talking about a particular example, the type α set. Having the idea "predicates are sets" in mind, one is tempted to think that in the particular example, S will take the role of defining particular sets, i.e., terms of type α set. This is not the case!

Rather, S is $\lambda x. True$ and hence trivial in this example. Moreover, in the example, r is $\alpha \Rightarrow bool$, and any term f of type r defines a set whose elements are of type α ; $Abs_{set} f$ is that set.

(rev. 32934)

More Detailed Explanations

732

Collect

We have seen *Collect* before in the theory file exercise_03 (naïve set theory).

Collect f is the set whose characteristic function is f. The usual concrete syntax is $\{x \mid f x\}$. The construct is called set comprehension. Note also that *Collect* is the same as Abs_{set} here, so there is no need to have them as separate constants, and for this reason Isabelle theory file Set.thy only provides *Collect*.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト イヨト

HOL:Foundations

733

The ∈-Sign

We define

$$x \in A = (Rep_{set} A) x$$

Since Rep_{set} has type $\alpha set \Rightarrow (\alpha \Rightarrow bool)$, this means that x is of type α and A is of type $(\alpha \Rightarrow bool)$. Therefore \in is of type $\alpha \Rightarrow (\alpha set) \Rightarrow bool$ (but written infix).

In the the Isabelle theory Set.thy, you will indeed find that the constant op : (Isabelle syntax for \in) has type $[\alpha, \alpha \, set] \Rightarrow bool$. However, you will not find anything directly corresponding to Rep_{set} .

One can see that this setup is equivalent to the one we have here (which was presented like that for the sake of generality). There are two axioms in Set.thy:

axioms

mem_Collect_eq [iff]: "(a : {x. P(x)}) = P(a)"

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト イヨト

HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations

734

$$\mathsf{Collect_mem_eq} \ [\mathsf{simp}]: \ ``\{\mathsf{x}. \ \mathsf{x}:\mathsf{A}\} = \mathsf{A}''$$

These axioms can be translated into definitions as follows:

$$\begin{split} & a \in \{x \mid P x\} = P a \rightsquigarrow \\ & a \in (Collect P) = P a \rightsquigarrow \\ & a \in (Abs_{set} P) = P a \rightsquigarrow \\ & Rep_{set}(Abs_{set} P) a = P a \rightsquigarrow Rep_{set}(Abs_{set} P) = P \end{split}$$

The last step uses extensionality.

Now the second one:

$$\begin{aligned} & \{x \mid x \in A\} = A \rightsquigarrow \\ & \{x \mid (Rep_{set}A) x\} = A \rightsquigarrow \\ & Collect(Rep_{set}A) = A \end{aligned}$$

Ignoring some universal quantifications (these are implicit in Isabelle),

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations	735

these are the isomorphy axioms for set.

(rev. 32934)

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三)

More Detailed Explanations

736

Consistent Set Theory

Typed set theory is a conservative extension of HOL and hence consistent.

Recall the problems with untyped set theory.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

737

"Exactly one" Term

When we say that there is "exactly one" f, this is meant modulo equality in HOL. This means that e.g. $\lambda x :: \alpha y :: \beta . y = b \land x = a$ is also such a term since $(\lambda x :: \alpha y :: \beta . x = a \land y = b) = (\lambda x :: \alpha y :: \beta . y = b \land x = a)$ is derivable in HOL.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト イヨト

э

More Detailed Explanations

738

Rep_{\times}

 ${\it Rep}_{\times}$ would be the generic name for one of the two isomorphism-defining functions.

Since Rep_{\times} cannot be represented directly for lexical reasons, type definitions in Isabelle provide two names for a type, one if the type is used as such, and one for the purpose of generating the names of the isomorphism-defining functions.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト イヨト

Iteration of λ 's

We write $\lambda a :: \alpha b :: \beta$. $\lambda x :: \alpha y :: \beta$. $x = a \land y = b$ rather than $\lambda a :: \alpha b :: \beta x :: \alpha y :: \beta . x = a \land y = b$ to emphasize the idea that one first applies $Pair_Rep$ to a and b, and the result is a function representing a pair, wich can then be applied to x and y.

(rev. 32934)

イロト イヨト イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

740

Sum Types

Idea of sum or union type: t is in the sum of τ and σ if t is either in τ or in σ . To do this formally in our type system, and also in the type system of functional programming languages like ML, t must be wrapped to signal if it is of type τ or of type σ .

For example, in ML one could define

datatype
$$(\alpha, \beta)$$
 sum = Inl $\alpha \mid Inr \beta$

So an element of (α, β) sum is either $Inl \ a$ where $a :: \alpha$ or $Inr \ b$ where $b :: \beta$.

(rev. 32934)

イロト 不得下 イヨト イヨト

More Detailed Explanations

741

Defining even

Suppose we have a type nat and a constant + with the expected meaning. We want to define a type even of even numbers. What is an even number?

(rev. 32934)

・ロト ・回ト ・ヨト ・ヨト

More Detailed Explanations

741

Defining even

Suppose we have a type nat and a constant + with the expected meaning. We want to define a type even of even numbers. What is an even number?

The following choice of S is adequate:

$$S \equiv \lambda x. \exists n. x = n + n$$

Using the Isabelle scheme, this would be

```
typedef (Even)
```

```
even = "\{x. \exists y.x=y+y\}"
```

We could then go on by defining an operation PLUS on even, say as follows:

constdefs

(rev. 32934)

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト

HOL:Conservative extensions

More Detailed Explanations

742

PLUS::[even,even] \rightarrow even (infixl 56) PLUS_def "op PLUS $\equiv \lambda xy$. Abs_Even(Rep_Even(x)+Rep_Even(x))" Note that we chose to use names even and Even, but we could have

used the same name twice as well.

(rev. 32934)

・ロト ・回ト ・ヨト ・ヨト

Recursive Type definitions

Types One, Numbers, Lists, Trees

- Using Constant Definition and Type Definition
- one: use subset of bool
- num: use subset of ind +Axiom of infinity
- ▶ lists: use subset of $(num \rightarrow \alpha) \times num$
- trees: use num
- recursive type definitions: use one, \times , +, α -tree
- Details in Melham (89): Automating Recursive Type Definitions in HOL

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 [臣]



Proof system of Isabelle/HOL

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Methods and Rules

Methods and Rules

Formulas, sequents, and rules revisited

Propositions can represent:

- ► formulas, generalized sequents: lemmas/theorems to be proven
- rules: to be applied in a proof step
- proof (sub-)goals, i.e., open leaves in a proof tree

Example: from Lecture.thy

- SPEC, SCHEMATIC (Warning)
- ARULE
- GOAL

A proven lemma/theorem is automatically transformed into a rule. That is, the set of rules is not fixed in Isabelle/HOL.E.g. ARULE.

Methods and Rules

Variables

Six kinds of variables:

- (logical) variables bound by the logic-quantifiers
- (logical) variables bound by the meta-quantifier
- free (logical) variables
- schematic variables (in rules and proofs)
- type variables
- schematic type variables

-

イロト イヨト イヨト -

Methods and Rules

Format of Goals and Rules

Format of Goals

- $\blacktriangleright \ (x1...xk. [|A1;...;Am|] \Longrightarrow C$
- xi are variables local to the subgoal (possibly none)
- Ai are called the assumptions (possibly none)
- C is called the conclusion
- usually first three types of variables sometimes also schematic variables.

Format of Rules

- $\blacktriangleright \ [|P1;...;Pn|] \Longrightarrow Q$
- Pi are called the premises (possibly none)
- P1 is called the major premise
- Q is called the consequent (not standard)
- Schematic variables in Pi, Q.

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 三臣 -

Methods and Rules

Application of rules

Methods are commands to work on the proof state

In particular, methods allow to apply rules. Whereas the set of rules is not fixed, the basic methods are fixed in Isabelle/HOL. Rule application:

- Applying rules is based on unification.
- Unification is done w.r.t. the schematic variables.
- The unifier is applied to the complete proof state!
- Unification may involve renaming of bound variables.

Example: (general idea of rule application)

- rule: $[|P1; P2|] \Longrightarrow Q$
- subgoal: $A \Longrightarrow C$
- ▶ if U unifies C and Q, then sufficient subgoals are:
- $\blacktriangleright U(A) \Longrightarrow U(P1), U(A) \Longrightarrow U(P2)$

(日)

Methods

Command: apply(method <parameters>)

Application of a rule to a subgoal depends on the method: Methods are (for convenience) be classified into:

- introduction methods: decompose formulae to the right of \Longrightarrow
- elimination methods: decompose formulae to the left of \Longrightarrow

Method rule <rulename> :

- unify Q with C; fails if no unifier exists; otherwise unifier U
- remaining subgoals: For i = 1, ..., n
- $\blacktriangleright \land x1...xk. \ U([|A1;...;Am|] \Longrightarrow Pi)$
- Example GOAL

(日)

Methods and Rules

Methods

Method assumption:

- unify C with first possible Aj; fails if no Aj exists for unification
- subgoal is closed (discharged)
- Example GOAL

Method erule <rulename> :

- unify Q with C and simultanneously unify P1 with some Aj; fails if no unifier exists; otherwise unifier U
- remaining subgoals: For i = 2, ..., n
- $\blacktriangleright \land x1...xk. \ U([|A1;...;Am \backslash Aj|] \Longrightarrow Pi)$
- Example GOAL

Methods

Method drule <rulename> :

- unify P1 some Aj; fails if no unifier exists; otherwise unifier U
- remaining subgoals:
- ► For i = 2, ..., n $\land x1...xk. U([|A1; ...; Am \land Aj|] \Longrightarrow Pi)$
- $\blacktriangleright \ \land x1...xk. \ U([|A1;...;Am \land Aj;Q|] \Longrightarrow C)$
- Example C1

Method frule <rulename> :

- unify P1 some Aj; fails if no unifier exists; otherwise unifier U
- remaining subgoals:
- For i = 2, ..., n $([|A1; ...; Am|] \Longrightarrow Pi)$
- $\blacktriangleright \bigwedge x1...xk. \ U([|A1;...;Am;Q|] \Longrightarrow C)$
- Example C1

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆目▶ ◆目▶ ◆□▶ ◆□
Methods

Method [edf]rule_tac x= term in <rule> :

- are similar to the version above but allow to influence the unification
- Example 5.8.2, p. 79, TAC
- FIXAX2

Method unfold <name_def> :

- unfolds the definition of a constant in all subgoals
- Example SPEC

Method induct_tac <freevar...> :

- uses the inductive definition of a function
- generates the corresponding subgoals

Methods and Rules

Fundamental rules of Isabelle/HOI See IsabelleHOLMain, Sect. 2.2

Remark

- Safe rules preserve provability
- e.g. conjl, impl, notl, iffl, refl, ccontr, classical, conjE, disjE
- Unsafe rules can turn a provable goal into an unprovable one
- e.g. disjl1, disjl2, impE, iffD1, iffD2, notE
- Apply safe rules before unsafe ones

Example

- ▶ lemma UNSAFE: "A ∨ ¬A"
- apply (rule disl1)
- sorry

An overview of theory Main

The structure of theory Main: p. 23

Set construction in Isabelle/HOL: Sect. 6

Natural numbers in Isabelle/HOL: Sect. 15

Remark Working with theory Main:

- The programmer cannot know the complete library
- The "verificator" cannot know all rules.

< 回 > < 三 > < 三 > .

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Rewriting and simplification

taken from IsabelleTutorial, Sect. 3.1) »> slidesNipkow:

apply(simp add: eq1 . . . eqn)

»> Demo: MyDemo, Simp

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Overview

- Term rewriting foundations
- Term rewriting in Isabelle/HOL
 - Basic simplification
 - Extensions

3

Proof system of Isabelle/HOL

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Term rewriting foundations

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Term rewriting means ...

Using equations l = r from left to right

▲□▶▲□▶▲三▶▲三部 三 のへの

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Term rewriting means ...

Using equations l = r from left to right As long as possible

<ロト < 回 > < 臣 > < 臣 ⁹ 三 臣

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Term rewriting means ...

Using equations l = r from left to right As long as possible

Terminology: equation ~> rewrite rule

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 * 二三

quations:

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
0+n &= n & (1) \\
(Suc m)+n &= Suc (m+n) & (2) \\
(Suc m \leq Suc n) &= (m \leq n) & (3) \\
(0 \leq m) &= True & (4)
\end{array}$$

Ec

$$\begin{array}{rcrcrcr} 0+n &=& n & (1)\\ \hline \textbf{Equations:} & (Suc \ m)+n &=& Suc \ (m+n) & (2)\\ (Suc \ m \leq Suc \ n) &=& (m \leq n) & (3)\\ (0 \leq m) &=& True & (4) \end{array}$$

$$0 + Suc \ 0 \ \le \ Suc \ 0 + x$$

Rewriting:

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨⁸³

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 0+n&=&n&(1)\\ (Suc\ m)+n&=&Suc\ (m+n)&(2)\\ (Suc\ m\leq Suc\ n)&=&(m\leq n)&(3)\\ (0\leq m)&=&True&(4)\\ \end{array}$$

$$Suc \ 0 \le Suc \ 0 + x$$

Rewriting:

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨⁸³

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 0+n&=&n&(1)\\ \mbox{(Suc }m)+n&=&Suc \ (m+n)&(2)\\ (Suc \ m\leq Suc \ n)&=&(m\leq n)&(3)\\ (0\leq m)&=&True&(4)\\ \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 0+Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ 0+x&\stackrel{(1)}{=}\\ Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ 0+x&\stackrel{(2)}{=}\\ Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ (0+x)\\ \end{array}$$
Rewriting:
$$\begin{array}{rcl} Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ (0+x)\\ Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ (0+x)\\ \end{array}$$

3

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三 部 -

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 0+n&=&n&(1)\\ \mbox{(Suc }m)+n&=&Suc \ (m+n)&(2)\\ (Suc \ m\leq Suc \ n)&=&(m\leq n)&(3)\\ (0\leq m)&=&True&(4)\\\\ 0+Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ 0+x&\stackrel{(1)}{=}\\ Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ 0+x&\stackrel{(2)}{=}\\ Suc \ 0&\leq Suc \ (0+x)&\stackrel{(3)}{=}\\ 0&\leq 0+x\end{array}$$

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三 部 -

$$0+n = n \qquad (1)$$
Equations:

$$(Suc m) + n = Suc (m+n) \qquad (2)$$

$$(Suc m \le Suc n) = (m \le n) \qquad (3)$$

$$(0 \le m) = True \qquad (4)$$

$$0+Suc \ 0 \le Suc \ 0+x \qquad \stackrel{(1)}{=}$$

$$Suc \ 0 \le Suc \ 0+x \qquad \stackrel{(2)}{=}$$

$$Suc \ 0 \le Suc \ (0+x) \qquad \stackrel{(3)}{=}$$

$$0 \le 0+x \qquad \stackrel{(4)}{=}$$

$$True$$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

- 20

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三 部 -

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

More formally

substitution = mapping from variables to terms

substitution = mapping from variables to terms

• l = r is applicable to term t[s]if there is a substitution σ such that $\sigma(l) = s$

3

< ロト < 回ト < 三ト < 三⁹

substitution = mapping from variables to terms

- l = r is applicable to term t[s]if there is a substitution σ such that $\sigma(l) = s$
- Result: $t[\sigma(r)]$

-

・ロト ・ 同 ト ・ 臣 ト ・ 臣 **

substitution = mapping from variables to terms

- l = r is applicable to term t[s]if there is a substitution σ such that $\sigma(l) = s$
- Result: $t[\sigma(r)]$
- Note: $t[s] = t[\sigma(r)]$

substitution = mapping from variables to terms

- l = r is applicable to term t[s]if there is a substitution σ such that $\sigma(l) = s$
- Result: $t[\sigma(r)]$
- Note: $t[s] = t[\sigma(r)]$

Example:

Equation: 0 + n = n

Term: a + (0 + (b + c))

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 * 二三

substitution = mapping from variables to terms

- l = r is applicable to term t[s]if there is a substitution σ such that $\sigma(l) = s$
- Result: $t[\sigma(r)]$
- Note: $t[s] = t[\sigma(r)]$

Example:

Equation: 0 + n = n

Term:
$$a + (0 + (b + c))$$

 $\sigma = \{n \mapsto b + c\}$

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 * 二三

substitution = mapping from variables to terms

- l = r is applicable to term t[s]if there is a substitution σ such that $\sigma(l) = s$
- Result: $t[\sigma(r)]$
- Note: $t[s] = t[\sigma(r)]$

Example:

Equation: 0 + n = nTerm: a + (0 + (b + c)) $\sigma = \{n \mapsto b + c\}$ Result: a + (b + c)

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Extension: conditional rewriting

Rewrite rules can be conditional:

$$\llbracket P_1 \dots P_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow l = r$$

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 * 一座

Extension: conditional rewriting

Rewrite rules can be conditional:

$$\llbracket P_1 \dots P_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow l = r$$

is applicable to term t[s] with σ if

- $\sigma(l) = s$ and
- $\sigma(P_1), \ldots, \sigma(P_n)$ are provable (again by rewriting).

Proof system of Isabelle/HOL

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Interlude: Variables in Isabelle

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Three kinds of variables:

- bound: $\forall x. x = x$
- free: *x* = *x*

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Three kinds of variables:

- bound: $\forall x. x = x$
- free: *x* = *x*
- schematic: ?x = ?x ("unknown")

< ロ > < 部 > < 글 > < 글 ? _ 글 ?

Three kinds of variables:

- bound: $\forall x. x = x$
- free: *x* = *x*
- schematic: ?x = ?x ("unknown")

Schematic variables:

Three kinds of variables:

- bound: $\forall x. x = x$
- free: *x* = *x*

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

schematic: ?x = ?x ("unknown")

Schematic variables:

• Logically: free = schematic

Three kinds of variables:

- bound: $\forall x. x = x$
- free: *x* = *x*
- schematic: ?x = ?x ("unknown")

Schematic variables:

- Logically: free = schematic
- Operationally:
 - free variables are fixed
 - schematic variables are instantiated by substitutions

< 口 > < 部 > < 글 > < 글 * _ 글 * _ 글 *

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

From x to ?x

State lemmas with free variables: lemma app_Nil2[simp]: xs @ [] = xs

< ロト < 部 ト < 토ト < 토행 - 토 -

```
From x to ?x
```

```
State lemmas with free variables:

lemma app_Nil2[simp]: xs @ [] = xs

:

done
```

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨ門 三三一

From x to ?x

```
State lemmas with free variables:
```

```
lemma app_Nil2[simp]: xs @ [] = xs
```

```
÷
```

done

After the proof: Isabelle changes xs to ?xs (internally):

?xs @ [] = ?xs

Now usable with arbitrary values for ?xs

< ロト < 部 ト < 注 ト < 注 ²⁹ - 注 -

```
From x to ?x
```

```
State lemmas with free variables:
```

```
lemma app_Nil2[simp]: xs @ [] = xs
```

```
done
```

1

After the proof: Isabelle changes xs to ?xs (internally):

?xs @ [] = ?xs

Now usable with arbitrary values for ?xs

Example: rewriting

```
rev(a @ []) = rev a
```

using *app_Nil*2 with $\sigma = \{?xs \mapsto a\}$

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨ門 三三一

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Term rewriting in Isabelle

Basic simplification

Goal: 1. $\llbracket P_1; \ldots; P_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow C$

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

apply(simp add: $eq_1 \dots eq_n$)

- ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ 三 ♥ - 三 ● のへで
Goal: 1.
$$\llbracket P_1; \ldots; P_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow C$$

apply(simp add: $eq_1 \dots eq_n$)

Simplify $P_1 \dots P_m$ and C using

lemmas with attribute simp

<ロト < (2) > < 注 > < 注 ? … 注 :

Goal: 1.
$$\llbracket P_1; \ldots; P_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow C$$

apply(simp add: $eq_1 \dots eq_n$)

Simplify $P_1 \dots P_m$ and C using

- lemmas with attribute simp
- rules from primrec, fun and datatype

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 ? () 三

Goal: 1.
$$\llbracket P_1; \ldots; P_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow C$$

apply(simp add: $eq_1 \dots eq_n$)

Simplify $P_1 \dots P_m$ and C using

- lemmas with attribute simp
- rules from primrec, fun and datatype
- additional lemmas $eq_1 \dots eq_n$

Goal: 1.
$$\llbracket P_1; \ldots; P_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow C$$

apply(simp add: $eq_1 \dots eq_n$)

Simplify $P_1 \dots P_m$ and C using

- lemmas with attribute simp
- rules from primrec, fun and datatype
- additional lemmas $eq_1 \dots eq_n$
- assumptions $P_1 \dots P_m$

Goal: 1.
$$\llbracket P_1; \ldots; P_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow C$$

apply(simp add: $eq_1 \dots eq_n$)

Simplify $P_1 \dots P_m$ and C using

- lemmas with attribute simp
- rules from primrec, fun and datatype
- additional lemmas eq₁... eq_n
- assumptions $P_1 \dots P_m$

Variations:

- (simp ... del: ...) removes simp-lemmas
- add and del are optional

auto versus simp

- auto acts on all subgoals
- simp acts only on subgoal 1
- auto applies simp and more

-

(日)
 (日)

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Termination

Simplification may not terminate. Isabelle uses *simp*-rules (almost) blindly from left to right.

-

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 > < 三 %

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Termination

Simplification may not terminate. Isabelle uses *simp*-rules (almost) blindly from left to right. Example: f(x) = g(x), g(x) = f(x)

Termination

Simplification may not terminate. Isabelle uses *simp*-rules (almost) blindly from left to right. Example: f(x) = g(x), g(x) = f(x)

$$\llbracket P_1 \dots P_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow l = r$$

is suitable as a *simp*-rule only if l is "bigger" than r and each P_i

<ロト < 回 ト < 回 ト < 国 * 二 正

Termination

Simplification may not terminate. Isabelle uses *simp*-rules (almost) blindly from left to right. Example: f(x) = g(x), g(x) = f(x)

$$\llbracket P_1 \dots P_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow l = r$$

is suitable as a *simp*-rule only if l is "bigger" than r and each P_i

> $n < m \implies (n < Suc m) = True$ Suc $n < m \implies (n < m) = True$

Termination

Simplification may not terminate. Isabelle uses *simp*-rules (almost) blindly from left to right. Example: f(x) = g(x), g(x) = f(x)

$$\llbracket P_1 \dots P_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow l = r$$

is suitable as a *simp*-rule only if l is "bigger" than r and each P_i

$$n < m \implies (n < Suc m) = True$$
 YES
Suc $n < m \implies (n < m) = True$ NO

<ロト < 回 ト < 回 ト < 画 * 二 正

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Rewriting with definitions

Definitions do not have the simp attribute.

Rewriting with definitions

Definitions do not have the simp attribute.

They must be used explicitly: (simp add: f_def ...)

-

< ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三 % …

Proof system of Isabelle/HOL

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Extensions of rewriting

Local assumptions

Simplification of $A \longrightarrow B$:

- 1. Simplify A to A'
- 2. Simplify B using A'

 $\begin{array}{c} P(\textit{if A then s else t}) \\ = \\ (A \longrightarrow P(s)) \land (\neg A \longrightarrow P(t)) \end{array}$

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲臣▶ ▲臣幣 二臣…

 $\begin{array}{c} P(\textit{if A then s else t}) \\ = \\ (A \longrightarrow P(s)) \land (\neg A \longrightarrow P(t)) \end{array}$

Automatic

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨザー 注一

$$\begin{array}{c} P(\text{if } A \text{ then } s \text{ else } t) \\ = \\ (A \longrightarrow P(s)) \land (\neg A \longrightarrow P(t)) \end{array}$$

Automatic

$$\begin{array}{c} P(\textit{case e of } 0 \Rightarrow a \mid \textit{Suc } n \Rightarrow b) \\ = \\ (e = 0 \longrightarrow P(a)) \land (\forall n. e = \textit{Suc } n \longrightarrow P(b)) \end{array}$$

- 20

・ロト ・四ト ・三ト ・三郎

$$P($$
if A then s else $t)$
=
 $(A \longrightarrow P(s)) \land (\neg A \longrightarrow P(t))$

Automatic

$$P(ext{case e of } 0 \Rightarrow a \mid ext{Suc } n \Rightarrow b)$$

=
 $(e = 0 \longrightarrow P(a)) \land (\forall n. e = ext{Suc } n \longrightarrow P(b))$

By hand: (simp split: nat.split)

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三 * 二 三 *

$$\begin{array}{c} P(\text{if } A \text{ then } s \text{ else } t) \\ = \\ (A \longrightarrow P(s)) \land (\neg A \longrightarrow P(t)) \end{array}$$

Automatic

$$\begin{array}{c} P(\text{case e of } 0 \Rightarrow a \mid \text{Suc } n \Rightarrow b) \\ = \\ (e = 0 \longrightarrow P(a)) \land (\forall n. e = \text{Suc } n \longrightarrow P(b)) \end{array}$$

By hand: (simp split: nat.split)

Similar for any datatype t: t.split

<ロ> <四> <四> <四> <三</td>

Problem: ?x + ?y = ?y + ?x does not terminate

Isabelle: Rewriting and simplification

Problem: ?x + ?y = ?y + ?x does not terminate

Solution: permutative *simp*-rules are used only if the term becomes lexicographically smaller.

<ロト <回ト < 回ト < 回外 = 三部 - 三部

Problem: ?x + ?y = ?y + ?x does not terminate

Solution: permutative *simp*-rules are used only if the term becomes lexicographically smaller.

Example: $b + a \rightarrow a + b$ but not $a + b \rightarrow b + a$.

Problem: ?x + ?y = ?y + ?x does not terminate

Solution: permutative *simp*-rules are used only if the term becomes lexicographically smaller.

Example: $b + a \rightsquigarrow a + b$ but not $a + b \rightsquigarrow b + a$.

For types nat, int etc:

- lemmas add_ac sort any sum (+)
- lemmas times_ac sort any product (*)

< ロ > < 四 > < 臣 > < 臣 ⁹⁹ - 臣 -

Problem: ?x + ?y = ?y + ?x does not terminate

Solution: permutative *simp*-rules are used only if the term becomes lexicographically smaller.

Example: $b + a \rightsquigarrow a + b$ but not $a + b \rightsquigarrow b + a$.

For types nat, int etc:

- lemmas add_ac sort any sum (+)
- lemmas times_ac sort any product (*)

Example: (simp add: add_ac) yields

$$(b+c) + a \leadsto \cdots \leadsto a + (b+c)$$

・ロト ・ 御 ト ・ 臣 ト ・ 臣 門 一 臣 …

Preprocessing

simp-rules are preprocessed (recursively) for maximal simplification power:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \neg A & \mapsto & A = False \\ A \longrightarrow B & \mapsto & A \Longrightarrow B \\ A \wedge B & \mapsto & A, B \\ \forall x.A(x) & \mapsto & A(?x) \\ A & \mapsto & A = True \end{array}$$

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 * 二三

Preprocessing

simp-rules are preprocessed (recursively) for maximal simplification power:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \neg A & \mapsto & A = False \\ A \longrightarrow B & \mapsto & A \Longrightarrow B \\ A \wedge B & \mapsto & A, B \\ \forall x.A(x) & \mapsto & A(?x) \\ A & \mapsto & A = True \end{array}$$

Example:

$$(p \longrightarrow q \land \neg r) \land s \mapsto$$

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 * 二三

Preprocessing

simp-rules are preprocessed (recursively) for maximal simplification power:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \neg A & \mapsto & A = False \\ A \longrightarrow B & \mapsto & A \Longrightarrow B \\ A \wedge B & \mapsto & A, B \\ \forall x.A(x) & \mapsto & A(?x) \\ A & \mapsto & A = True \end{array}$$

Example:

$$(p \longrightarrow q \land \neg r) \land s \quad \mapsto \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} p \Longrightarrow q = True \\ p \Longrightarrow r = False \\ s = True \end{array} \right\}$$

-

When everything else fails: Tracing

Set trace mode on/off in Proof General:

 $\textbf{Isabelle} \rightarrow \textbf{Settings} \rightarrow \textbf{Trace simplifier}$

Output in separate trace buffer

taken from IsabelleTutorial, Sect. 2, Sect. 3.2, Sect. 3.5 »> slidesNipkow:»> Demo: MyDemo,Trees

Slides for Session 3.2, 1-12 (slidesNipkow 87-93)

»>MyDemo, Induction Heuristics

Slides for Session 2, 57-79 »>MyDemo, Fun

-

A (1) < A (2) < A (2) </p>

Basic heuristics

Theorems about recursive functions are proved by induction

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

-

* • • *

Basic heuristics

Theorems about recursive functions are proved by induction

Induction on argument number i of fif f is defined by recursion on argument number i

э

A tail recursive reverse

primrec *itrev* :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list

A tail recursive reverse

```
primrec itrev :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow here
itrev [] ys = ys |
itrev (x#xs) ys =
```

<ロト < 部 ト < 三 ト < 三¹⁰³ 三 二

A tail recursive reverse

```
primrec itrev :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where
itrev [] ys = ys |
itrev (x#xs) ys = itrev xs (x#ys)
```

<ロト < 回 ト < 巨 ト < 三¹⁰³ 三三 -

A tail recursive reverse

primrec itrev :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where itrev [] ys = ys | itrev (x#xs) ys = itrev xs (x#ys)

lemma itrev xs [] = rev xs

<ロト < 回 ト < 巨 ト < 三¹⁰³ 三三 -
A tail recursive reverse

```
primrec itrev :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where
itrev [] ys = ys |
itrev (x#xs) ys = itrev xs (x#ys)
lemma itrev xs [] = rev xs
```

Why in this direction?

3

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三¹⁰³

A tail recursive reverse

primrec itrev :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list where itrev [] ys = ys | itrev (x#xs) ys = itrev xs (x#ys)

lemma itrev xs [] = rev xs

Why in this direction?

Because the lhs is "more complex" than the rhs.

-

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三¹⁰³

Case analysis and structural induction

Demo

Case analysis and structural induction

Generalisation

• Replace constants by variables

Case analysis and structural induction

Generalisation

- Replace constants by variables
- Generalize free variables
 - by ∀ in formula
 - · by arbitrary in induction proof

Ŀ

Proof search automation

taken from IsabelleTutorial, Sect. 5.12, 5.13

Proof automation tries to apply rules either

- to finish the proof of (sub-)goal
- to simplify the subgoals

We call this the success criterion.

Methods for proof automation are different in

- the success criterion
- the rules they use
- the way in which these rule are applied

Simplification applies rewrite rules repeatedly as long as possible. Classical reasoning uses search and backtracking with rules from predicate logic.

General Methods (Tactics)

blast:

- tries to finish proof of (sub-)goal
- classical reasoner

clarify:

- tries to perform obvious proof steps
- classical reasoner (only safe rule, no splitting of (sub-)goal)

safe:

- tries to perform obvious proof steps
- classical reasoner (only safe rule, splitting)

-

General Methods (Tactics)

clarsimp:

- tries to finish proof of (sub-)goal
- classical reasoner interleaved with simplification (only safe rule, no splitting)

force:

- tries to finish proof of (sub-)goal
- classical reasoner and simplification

auto:

- tries to perform proof steps on all subgoals
- classical reasoner and simplification (splitting)

-

Proof automation

More proof methods

Forward proof step in backward proof:

apply rules to assumptions

Forward proofs (Hilbert style proofs):

directly prove a theorem from proven theorems

Directives/attributes:

- of: instantiates the variables of a rule to a list of terms
- OF: applies a rule to a list of theorems
- THEN: gives a theorem to named rule and returns the conclusion
- simplified: applies the simplifier to a theorem

(4月) キョン キョン ヨ

More proof methods

Forward proof step in backward proof:

apply rules to assumptions

Forward proofs (Hilbert style proofs):

directly prove a theorem from proven theorems

Directives/attributes:

- of: instantiates the variables of a rule to a list of terms
- OF: applies a rule to a list of theorems
- THEN: gives a theorem to named rule and returns the conclusion
- simplified: applies the simplifier to a theorem

(4月) キョン キョン ヨ

Forward proofs: OF

 $r[OF r_1 \ldots r_n]$

Prove assumption 1 of theorem r with theorem r_1 , and assumption 2 with theorem r_2 , and ...

3

↓ ↓ ⊕ ↓ ↓ ⊕ 134
 ↓ ↓ ⊕ 134

Forward proofs: OF

 $r[OF r_1 \dots r_n]$

Prove assumption 1 of theorem r with theorem r_1 , and assumption 2 with theorem r_2 , and ...

Rule r $\llbracket A_1; \ldots; A_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow A$ Rule r_1 $\llbracket B_1; \ldots; B_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow B$ Substitution $\sigma(B) \equiv \sigma(A_1)$ $r[OF r_1]$

<ロト < 部ト < 注ト < 注¹³⁴ 三日 -

Forward proofs: OF

 $r[OF r_1 \dots r_n]$

Prove assumption 1 of theorem r with theorem r_1 , and assumption 2 with theorem r_2 , and ...

Rule r $\llbracket A_1; \ldots; A_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow A$ Rule r_1 $\llbracket B_1; \ldots; B_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow B$ Substitution $\sigma(B) \equiv \sigma(A_1)$ $r[OF r_1]$ $\sigma(\llbracket B_1; \ldots; B_n; A_2; \ldots; A_m \rrbracket \Longrightarrow A)$

<ロト < 部ト < 注ト < 注¹³⁴ 三日 -

More proof methods

Method insert:

inserts a theorem as a new assumption into current subgoal

Method subgoal_tac:

- inserts an arbitrary formula F as assumption
- F becomes additional subgoal

»>MyDemo, subgoal_tac

-

(4) 문 (4) R (4) R

Chapter 5

Sets, Functions, Relations, and Fixpoints

Sets, Functions, Relations

see IHT 6.1, 6.2, 6.3

- Finite Set Notation
- Set Comprehension
- Binding Operators
- Finiteness and Cardinality
- Function update, Range, Injective Surjective
- Relations, Predicates

Overview

Set notation

Sets

Inductively defined sets

Set notation

Sets



Sets over type 'a:

'a set

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

Sets

 $a set = a \Rightarrow bool$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三¹⁴⁹ 三三 -

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

Sets

$$a set = a \Rightarrow bool$$

• {}, {
$$e_1, \ldots, e_n$$
}, { $x. P x$ }

-2

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨¹⁴⁹

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

Sets

$$a set = a \Rightarrow bool$$

• {}, {
$$e_1, \ldots, e_n$$
}, { $x. P x$ }

•
$$e \in A$$
, $A \subseteq B$

-2

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨¹⁴⁹

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

Sets

$$a set = a \Rightarrow bool$$

• {}, {
$$e_1, \ldots, e_n$$
}, { $x. P x$ }

•
$$e \in A$$
, $A \subseteq B$

•
$$A \cup B$$
, $A \cap B$, $A - B$, $-A$

-2

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨¹⁴⁹

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

Sets

$$a \operatorname{set} = a \Rightarrow bool$$

- {}, { e_1, \ldots, e_n }, {x. P x}
- $e \in A$, $A \subseteq B$
- $A \cup B$, $A \cap B$, A B, -A
- $\bigcup_{x\in A} Bx$, $\bigcap_{x\in A} Bx$

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

Sets

$$a \operatorname{set} = a \Rightarrow bool$$

- {}, { e_1, \ldots, e_n }, {x. P x}
- $e \in A$, $A \subseteq B$
- $A \cup B$, $A \cap B$, A B, -A
- $\bigcup_{x\in A} Bx$, $\bigcap_{x\in A} Bx$
- {i..j}

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

$$a \operatorname{set} = a \Rightarrow bool$$

- {}, { e_1, \ldots, e_n }, {x. P x}
- $e \in A$, $A \subseteq B$
- $A \cup B$, $A \cap B$, A B, -A
- $\bigcup_{x\in A} Bx$, $\bigcap_{x\in A} Bx$
- {i..j}
- insert :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a set \Rightarrow 'a set

<ロ> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日</p>

Sets

Sets over type 'a:

Sets

 $a set = a \Rightarrow bool$

- {}, { e_1, \ldots, e_n }, {x. P x}
- $e \in A$, $A \subseteq B$
- $A \cup B$, $A \cap B$, A B, -A
- $\bigcup_{x\in A} Bx$, $\bigcap_{x\in A} Bx$
- {i..j}
- insert :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a set \Rightarrow 'a set

• . . .

<ロ> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日> <日</p>

Proofs about sets

Natural deduction proofs:

Sets

• equalityI: $\llbracket A \subseteq B; B \subseteq A \rrbracket \Longrightarrow A = B$

- E

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨¹⁴

Proofs about sets

Natural deduction proofs:

- equalityI: $\llbracket A \subseteq B; B \subseteq A \rrbracket \Longrightarrow A = B$
- subsetI: $(\land x. x \in A \Longrightarrow x \in B) \Longrightarrow A \subseteq B$

<ロト < 部 ト < 注 ト < 注4 - 注 -

Proofs about sets

Natural deduction proofs:

- equalityI: $\llbracket A \subseteq B; B \subseteq A \rrbracket \Longrightarrow A = B$
- subsetI: ($(X, x \in A \Longrightarrow x \in B) \Longrightarrow A \subseteq B$
- ... (see Tutorial)

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 > < 三¹⁴ 三 三 -

Demo: proofs about sets

Bounded quantifiers

• ∀*x*∈*A*. *P x*

・ ロ ト ・ 御 ト ・ 三 ト ・ 三¹⁴³ 三 の へ ()

Bounded quantifiers

• $\forall x \in A. P x \equiv \forall x. x \in A \longrightarrow P x$

Bounded quantifiers

- $\forall x \in A. P x \equiv \forall x. x \in A \longrightarrow P x$
- ∃*x*∈*A*. *P x*

Sets

Bounded quantifiers

- $\forall x \in A. Px \equiv \forall x. x \in A \longrightarrow Px$
- $\exists x \in A. Px \equiv \exists x. x \in A \land Px$

Bounded quantifiers

- $\forall x \in A. Px \equiv \forall x. x \in A \longrightarrow Px$
- $\exists x \in A. Px \equiv \exists x. x \in A \land Px$
- ballI: $(\land x. x \in A \Longrightarrow P x) \Longrightarrow \forall x \in A. P x$
- bspec: $[\![\forall x \in A. P x; x \in A]\!] \Longrightarrow P x$

▲ □ ▶ ▲ 圖 ▶ ▲ 臣 ▶ ▲ 臣¹⁴³ □ 臣 □
Bounded quantifiers

- $\forall x \in A. Px \equiv \forall x. x \in A \longrightarrow Px$
- $\exists x \in A. Px \equiv \exists x. x \in A \land Px$
- ballI: $(\land x. x \in A \Longrightarrow P x) \Longrightarrow \forall x \in A. P x$
- bspec: $\llbracket \forall x \in A. \ P x; x \in A \rrbracket \Longrightarrow P x$
- bexI: $\llbracket P x; x \in A \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \exists x \in A. P x$
- bexe: $[\![\exists x \in A. P x; \land x. [\![x \in A; P x]\!] \Longrightarrow Q]\!] \Longrightarrow Q$

<ロト < 同ト < ヨト < ヨ¹⁴³ ヨ の ()への

Sets

Inductively defined sets

-

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < Ξ¹⁴.

Informally:

Sets

Informally:

Sets

0 is even

-

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 三ト < 三¹⁴⁵

Informally:

Sets

- 0 is even
- If n is even, so is n+2

-

<ロト < 回ト < 回ト < 三ト < 三¹⁴⁵

Informally:

Sets

- 0 is even
- If n is even, so is n+2
- · These are the only even numbers

3

Informally:

Sets

- 0 is even
- If n is even, so is n+2
- · These are the only even numbers

In Isabelle/HOL:

inductive_set Ev :: nat set — The set of all even numbers

3

◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ 三 ▶ ◆ 三¹⁴5 -

Informally:

Sets

- 0 is even
- If n is even, so is n+2
- · These are the only even numbers

In Isabelle/HOL:

```
inductive_set Ev :: nat set — The set of all even numbers
where
0 \in Ev /
n \in Ev \implies n+2 \in Ev
```

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 三 > < 三¹⁴5 三三 。

Format of inductive definitions

inductive_set $S :: \tau$ set

Sets

<ロト < 回 > < 巨 > < 巨¹⁴⁵ 三 のへで

Format of inductive definitions

```
inductive_set S :: \tau set
where
[ a_1 \in S; ...; a_n \in S; A_1; ...; A_k ] \implies a \in S /
\vdots
```

Sets

<ロト < 部 ト < 注 ト < 注¹⁴⁹ 三三 -

Format of inductive definitions

inductive_set
$$S :: \tau$$
 set
where
 $[a_1 \in S; ...; a_n \in S; A_1; ...; A_k] \implies a \in S |$
 \vdots
where $A_1; ...; A_k$ are side conditions not involving S .

Sets

<ロト < 部 ト < 注 ト < 注¹⁴⁹ 三三 -

Easy: $4 \in Ev$ $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Sets

Easy:
$$4 \in Ev$$

 $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Sets

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三¹⁴⁷ 三三 -

Easy:
$$4 \in Ev$$

 $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Sets

Idea: induction on the length of the derivation of $m \in Ev$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ * □ = - - - □ = -

Easy: $4 \in Ev$ $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Sets

Idea: induction on the length of the derivation of $m \in Ev$ Better: induction on the *structure* of the derivation

(日) (同) (三) (三) (三)

Easy: $4 \in Ev$ $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Idea: induction on the length of the derivation of $m \in Ev$ Better: induction on the *structure* of the derivation Two cases: $m \in Ev$ is proved by

• rule *0* ∈ *Ev*

◆ □ ▶ ◆ 同 ▶ ◆ 国 ▶ ◆ 国¹⁴⁷ □ 国

Easy: $4 \in Ev$ $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Idea: induction on the length of the derivation of $m \in Ev$ Better: induction on the *structure* of the derivation Two cases: $m \in Ev$ is proved by

• rule
$$0 \in Ev$$

 $\implies m = 0 \implies 0+0 \in Ev$

(日) (同) (三) (三) (三)

Easy: $4 \in Ev$ $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Idea: induction on the length of the derivation of $m \in Ev$ Better: induction on the *structure* of the derivation

Two cases: $m \in Ev$ is proved by

- rule $0 \in Ev$ $\implies m = 0 \implies 0+0 \in Ev$
- rule $n \in Ev \implies n+2 \in Ev$

◆ □ ▶ ◆ 同 ▶ ◆ 国 ▶ ◆ 国¹⁴7 - 国 -

Easy: $4 \in Ev$ $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Idea: induction on the length of the derivation of $m \in Ev$ Better: induction on the *structure* of the derivation Two cases: $m \in Ev$ is proved by

- rule $0 \in Ev$ $\implies m = 0 \implies 0+0 \in Ev$
- rule $n \in Ev \implies n+2 \in Ev$ $\implies m = n+2$ and $n+n \in Ev$ (ind. hyp.!)

▲ □ ▶ ★ 御 ▶ ★ 注 ▶ ★ 注147 - 注 -

Easy: $4 \in Ev$ $0 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 2 \in Ev \Longrightarrow 4 \in Ev$

Trickier: $m \in Ev \implies m+m \in Ev$

Idea: induction on the length of the derivation of $m \in Ev$ Better: induction on the *structure* of the derivation Two cases: $m \in Ev$ is proved by

- rule $0 \in Ev$ $\implies m = 0 \implies 0+0 \in Ev$
- rule $n \in Ev \implies n+2 \in Ev$
 - \implies *m* = *n*+2 and *n*+*n* \in *Ev* (ind. hyp.!)
 - \implies $m+m = (n+2)+(n+2) = ((n+n)+2)+2 \in Ev$

To prove

Sets

$$n \in Ev \Longrightarrow Pn$$

by *rule induction* on $n \in Ev$ we must prove

3

<ロト < 部ト < 三ト < 三¹⁴

To prove

Sets

$$n \in Ev \Longrightarrow Pn$$

by *rule induction* on $n \in Ev$ we must prove

• P 0

-

<ロト < 部ト < 三ト < 三¹⁴9.

To prove

Sets

$$n \in Ev \Longrightarrow Pn$$

by *rule induction* on $n \in Ev$ we must prove

- P 0
- $P n \Longrightarrow P(n+2)$

3

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨¹⁴⁸

To prove

Sets

$$n \in Ev \Longrightarrow Pn$$

by *rule induction* on $n \in Ev$ we must prove

- P 0
- $P n \Longrightarrow P(n+2)$

Rule Ev. induct:

$$\llbracket n \in Ev; P 0; \bigwedge n. P n \Longrightarrow P(n+2) \rrbracket \Longrightarrow P n$$

-

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三¹⁴8

Set S is defined inductively.

Sets

Set *S* is defined inductively. To prove

Sets

$$x \in S \Longrightarrow P x$$

by *rule induction* on $x \in S$

3

◆□ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ 三 ▶ ◆ 三¹⁴9

Set *S* is defined inductively. To prove

Sets

$$x \in S \Longrightarrow P x$$

by *rule induction* on $x \in S$ we must prove for every rule $\llbracket a_1 \in S; \dots; a_n \in S \rrbracket \Longrightarrow a \in S$ that *P* is preserved:

3

<ロト < 回ト < 回ト < 三ト < 三¹⁴⁹

Set *S* is defined inductively. To prove

$$x \in S \Longrightarrow P x$$

by *rule induction* on $x \in S$ we must prove for every rule

$$[\ {oldsymbol a}_1 \in {old S}; \ \ldots \ ; \ {oldsymbol a}_n \in {old S} \] \Longrightarrow {oldsymbol a} \in {old S}$$

that *P* is preserved:

 $\llbracket P a_1; \ldots; P a_n \rrbracket \Longrightarrow P a$

3

(二)、(同)、(三)、(三¹⁴)

Set *S* is defined inductively. To prove

$$x \in S \Longrightarrow P x$$

by *rule induction* on $x \in S$ we must prove for every rule

$$[\ {m a}_1 \in {m S}; \ \dots \ ; \ {m a}_n \in {m S} \] \Longrightarrow {m a} \in {m S}$$

that P is preserved:

 $\llbracket \mathsf{P} \, \mathsf{a}_1; \ldots; \mathsf{P} \, \mathsf{a}_n \, \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \mathsf{P} \, \mathsf{a}$

In Isabelle/HOL:

apply(induct rule: S.induct)

3

Sets

Demo: inductively defined sets

<ロト < 回ト < 三ト < 三¹⁵9

 $x \in S \rightsquigarrow Sx$

Sets

 $x \in S \iff S x$ Example: inductive $Ev :: nat \Rightarrow bool$ where $Ev 0 \mid l$ $Ev n \Longrightarrow Ev (n + 2)$

Sets

<ロト < 回 ト < 三 ト < 三¹⁵ 三 三 -

 $x \in S \iff S x$ Example: inductive $Ev :: nat \Rightarrow bool$ where $Ev 0 \mid l$ $Ev n \Longrightarrow Ev (n + 2)$ Comparison:

predicate:simpler syntaxset:direct usage of ∪ etc

Sets

<ロ><日><日><日</th><日</th><日</th>

 $x \in S \iff Sx$ Example: inductive $Ev :: nat \Rightarrow bool$ where $Ev 0 \mid l$ $Ev n \Longrightarrow Ev (n + 2)$ Comparison: predicate: simpler syntax set: direct usage of \cup etc

Inductive predicates can be of type $\tau_1 \Rightarrow ... \Rightarrow \tau_n \Rightarrow bool$

Sets

<ロト (四) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Sets

Automating it

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 画 > < 画¹⁵? 一 画 。

simp and auto

simp rewriting and a bit of arithmetic *auto* rewriting and a bit of arithmetic, logic & sets

Sets

-
simp and auto

simp rewriting and a bit of arithmetic *auto* rewriting and a bit of arithmetic, logic & sets

Show you where they got stuck

Sets

-

<ロト < 回ト < 回ト < 三ト < 三¹⁵³

simp and auto

simp rewriting and a bit of arithmetic *auto* rewriting and a bit of arithmetic, logic & sets

- Show you where they got stuck
- highly incomplete wrt logic

Sets

-

<ロト < 回ト < 回ト < 三ト < 三¹⁵³

• A complete (for FOL) tableaux calculus implementation

Sets

- A complete (for FOL) tableaux calculus implementation
- Covers logic, sets, relations, ...

Sets

-

<ロト < 回ト < 巨ト < 巨¹⁵⁴

- A complete (for FOL) tableaux calculus implementation
- Covers logic, sets, relations, ...

Sets

• Extensible with intro/elim rules

-

<ロト < 回ト < 三ト < 三¹⁵⁴

- A complete (for FOL) tableaux calculus implementation
- Covers logic, sets, relations, ...
- Extensible with intro/elim rules
- Almost no "="

Sets

-

◆ □ ▶ ◆ ⑦ ▶ ◆ 注 ▶ ◆ 注19

Sets

Demo: blast

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Well founded relations

Well founded relations

see IHT 6.4

- Well founded orderings: Induction
- Complete Lattices Fixpoints
- Knaster-Tarski Theorem

-

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト



Importance

- Inductive definitions of sets and relations
- Reminder: relations are sets in Isabelle/HOL
- ► E.g.: 0 ∈ even
- ▶ $n \in even ==> n+2 \in even$

Properties of Orderings and Functions

Definition 5.1. Monotone Function Let D be a set with an ordering relation \leq . A function $f : D \rightarrow D$ is called monotone, if $x \leq y \longrightarrow f(x) \leq f(y)$

Remark

Fixpoints

The inductive definition above induces a monotone function on sets with the subset relation as ordering:

- f_even :: nat set -> nat set
- f_even $(A) = A \cup \{0\} \cup \{n+2|n \in A\}$
- ►

< 口 > < 同 > < 回 > < 回 > 、 □ > 、 □ > ∞ □ >

Well-founded Orderings

Fixpoints

• Partial-order $\leq \subseteq X \times X$ well-founded iff

 $(\forall Y \subseteq X : Y \neq \emptyset \rightarrow (\exists y \in Y : y \text{ minimal in } Y \text{ in respect of } \leq))$

- Quasi-order \leq well-founded iff strict part of \leq is well-founded.
- ▶ Initial segment: $Y \subseteq X$, left-closed i.e.

$$(\forall y \in Y : (\forall x \in X : x \leq y \rightarrow x \in Y))$$

► Initial section of *x*: sec(*x*) = {*y* : *y* < *x*}

Supremum

- Let (X, \leq) be a partial-order and $Y \subseteq X$
- $S \subseteq X$ is a chain iff elements of S are linearly ordered through \leq .
- y is an upper bound of Y iff

$$\forall y' \in Y : y' \leq y$$

Supremum: y is a supremum of Y iff y is an upper bound of Y and

$$\forall y' \in X : ((y' \text{ upper bound of } Y) \rightarrow y \leq y')$$

Analog: lower bound, Infimum inf(Y)

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三)



▶ A Partial-order (D, \sqsubseteq) is a complete partial ordering (CPO) iff

- ▶ \exists the smallest element \bot of *D* (with respect of \sqsubseteq)
- ► Each chain *S* has a supremum sup(*S*).

(日)
 (日)



Example 5.2. .

- ▶ $(\mathcal{P}(X), \subseteq)$ is CPO.
- ▶ (*D*, ⊆) is CPO with
 - $D = X \rightarrow Y$: set of all the partial functions f with dom $(f) \subseteq X$ and cod $(f) \subseteq Y$.
 - Let $f, g \in X \nrightarrow Y$.

 $f \sqsubseteq g \text{ iff } \operatorname{dom}(f) \subseteq \operatorname{dom}(g) \land (\forall x \in \operatorname{dom}(f) : f(x) = g(x))$

(日)
 (日)

Monotonous, continuous

- ► (D, ⊆), (E, ⊆') CPOs
- $f: D \rightarrow E$ monotonous iff

$$(\forall d, d' \in D : d \sqsubseteq d' \rightarrow f(d) \sqsubseteq' f(d'))$$

• $f: D \rightarrow E$ continuous iff f monotonous and

$$(\forall S \subseteq D : S \text{ chain } \rightarrow f(\sup(S)) = \sup(f(S)))$$

• $X \subseteq D$ is admissible iff

$$(\forall S \subseteq X : S \text{ chain } \rightarrow \sup(S) \in X)$$

Fixpoint

•
$$(D, \sqsubseteq)$$
 CPO, $f : D \rightarrow D$

• $d \in D$ fixpoint of f iff

$$f(d) = d$$

• $d \in D$ smallest fixpoint of f iff d fixpoint of f and

$$(\forall d' \in D : d' \text{ fixpoint } \rightarrow d \sqsubseteq d')$$

Fixpoint-Theorem

Theorem 5.3 (Fixpoint-Theorem:). (D, \sqsubseteq) *CPO,* $f : D \rightarrow D$ *continuous, then* f *has a smallest fixpoint* μf *and*

 $\mu f = \sup\{f^i(\bot) : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$

Proof: (Sketch)

▶
$$\sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}$$
 fixpoint:
 $f(\sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}) = \sup\{f^{i+1}(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}$
(continuous)
 $= \sup\{\sup\{f^{i+1}(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}, \bot\}$
 $= \sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Fixpoint-Theorem (Cont.)

Fixpoint-Theorem: (D, \sqsubseteq) CPO, $f : D \rightarrow D$ continuous, then f has a smallest fixpoint μf and

 $\mu f = \sup\{f^i(\bot) : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$

Proof: (Continuation)

- $\sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}$ smallest fixpoint:
 - 1. d' fixpoint of f
 - **2**. ⊥⊑ *d*′
 - 3. *f* monotonous, $d' \operatorname{FP}: f(\bot) \sqsubseteq f(d') = d'$
 - 4. Induction: $\forall i \in \mathbb{N} : f^i(\bot) \sqsubseteq f^i(d') = d'$
 - 5. $\sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\} \sqsubseteq d'$

・ロット (四)・ (日)・ (日)・ (日)

Induction over $\ensuremath{\mathbb{N}}$

Induction

Induction's principle:

$$(\forall X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : ((0 \in X \land (\forall x \in X : x \in X \to x + 1 \in X))) \to X = \mathbb{N})$$

Correctness:

- 1. Let's assume no, so $\exists X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : \mathbb{N} \setminus X \neq \emptyset$
- 2. Let *y* be minimum in $\mathbb{N} \setminus X$ (with respect to <).

3.
$$y \neq 0$$

- $4. \ y-1 \in X \land y \notin X$
- 5. Contradiction

Induction over N (Alternative)

Induction's principle:

 $(\forall X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : (\forall x \in \mathbb{N} : \operatorname{sec}(x) \subseteq X \to x \in X) \to X = \mathbb{N})$

Correctness:

Induction

- 1. Let's assume no, so $\exists X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : \mathbb{N} \setminus X \neq \emptyset$
- 2. Let *y* be minimum in $\mathbb{N} \setminus X$ (with respect to <).
- 3. $\sec(y) \subseteq X, y \notin X$
- 4. Contradiction

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Induction

Well-founded induction

Induction's principle: Let (Z, \leq) be a well-founded partial order.

 $(\forall X \subseteq Z : (\forall x \in Z : \sec(x) \subseteq X \to x \in X) \to X = Z)$

Correctness:

- 1. Let's assume no, so $Z \setminus X \neq \emptyset$
- 2. Let *z* be a minimum in $Z \setminus X$ (in respect of \leq).
- 3. $\sec(z) \subseteq X, z \notin X$
- 4. Contradiction

< ロ > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

FP-Induction: Proving properties of fixpoints

Induction's principle: Let (D, \sqsubseteq) CPO, $f : D \rightarrow D$ continuous.

 $(\forall X \subseteq D \text{ admissible} : (\bot \in X \land (\forall y : y \in X \rightarrow f(y) \in X)) \rightarrow \mu f \in X)$

Correctness: Let $X \subseteq D$ admissible.

$$\begin{split} \mu f \in X &\Leftrightarrow \sup\{f^{i}(\bot) : i \in \mathbb{N}\} \in X & (\text{FP-theorem}) \\ & \leftarrow \forall i \in \mathbb{N} : f^{i}(\bot) \in X & (X \text{ admissible}) \\ & \leftarrow \bot \in X \land (\forall n \in \mathbb{N} : f^{n}(\bot) \in X \to f(f^{n}(\bot)) \in X) \\ & (\text{Induction } \mathbb{N}) \\ & \leftarrow \bot \in X \land (\forall y \in X \to f(y) \in X) & (\text{Ass.}) \end{split}$$

Problem

Induction

Exercise 5.4. Let (D, \sqsubseteq) CPO with

- $X = Y = \mathbb{N}$
- ► $D = X \Rightarrow Y$: set all partial functions f with dom $(f) \subseteq X$ and cod $(f) \subseteq Y$.
- Let $f, g \in X \nrightarrow Y$.

 $f \sqsubseteq g \text{ iff } \operatorname{dom}(f) \subseteq \operatorname{dom}(g) \land (\forall x \in \operatorname{dom}(f) : f(x) = g(x))$

Consider

$$\begin{array}{rccc} F: & D & \to & \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}) \\ & g & \mapsto & \begin{cases} \{(0,1)\} & g = \emptyset \\ \{(x,x \cdot g(x-1)) : x-1 \in \mathsf{dom}(g)\} \cup \{(0,1)\} & \mathsf{otherwise} \end{cases} \end{array}$$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆目▶ ◆目▶ ◆□▶ ◆□

Problem

Induction

Prove:

- 1. $\forall g \in D : F(g) \in D$, i.e. $F : D \rightarrow D$
- 2. $F: D \rightarrow D$ continuous

3.
$$\forall n \in \mathbb{N} : \mu F(n) = n!$$

Note:

• μ *F* can be understood as the semantics of a function's definition

function Fac
$$(n : \mathbb{N}_{\perp}) : \mathbb{N}_{\perp} =_{def}$$

if $n = 0$ then 1
else $n \cdot Fac(n - 1)$

Keyword: ' functions' in Isabelle

Problem

Induction

Exercise 5.5. Prove: Let G = (V, E) be an infinite directed graph with

- G has finitely many roots (nodes without incoming edges).
- Each node has finite out-degree.
- Each node is reachable from a root.

There exists an infinite path that begins on a root.

Complete Lattices and Existence of Fixpoints

Definition 5.6. Complete Lattice

Induction

A partially ordered set (L, \leq) is a complete lattice if every subset A of L has both a greatest lower bound (the infimum, also called the meet) and a least upper bound (the supremum, also called the join) in (L, \leq) . The meet is denoted by $\bigwedge A$, and the join by $\bigvee A$.

Lemma 5.7. Complete lattices are non empty.

Theorem 5.8. Knaster-Tarski

Let (L, \leq) be a complete lattice and let $f : L \to L$ be a monotone function. Then the set of fixed points of f in L is also a complete lattice.

Consequence 5.9. The Knaster-Tarski theorem guarantees the existence of least and greatest fixpoints.

ロト 不得 ト イヨト イヨト

Proof of the Knaster-Tarski theorem

Reformulation

Induction

For a complete lattice (L, \leq) and a monotone function $f : L \rightarrow L$ on L, the set of all fixpoints of f is also a complete lattice (P, \leq) , with:

▶ $\bigvee P = \bigvee \{x \in L | x \leq f(x)\}$ as the greatest fixpoint of f

• $\bigwedge P = \bigwedge \{x \in L | f(x) \le x\}$ as the least fixpoint of f

Proof: We begin by showing that P has least and greatest elements. Let $D = \{y \in L | y \leq f(y)\}$ and $x \in D$. Then, because f is monotone, we have $f(x) \leq f(f(x))$, that is $f(x) \in D$. Now let $u = \bigvee D$. Then $x \leq u$ and $f(x) \leq f(u)$, so $x \leq f(x) \leq f(u)$. Therefore f(u) is an upper bound of D, but u is the least upper bound, so $u \leq f(u)$, i.e. $u \in D$. Then $f(u) \in D$ (from above) and $f(u) \leq u$ hence f(u) = u. Because every fixpoint is in D we have that u is the greatest fixpoint of f.

Proof of the Knaster-Tarski theorem (cont.)

The function f is monotone on the dual (complete) lattice (L^{op}, \geq) . As we have just proved, its greatest fixpoint there exists. It is the least one on L, so P has least and greatest elements, or more generally that every monotone function on a complete lattice has least and greatest fixpoints.

If $a \in L$ and $b \in L$, $a \leq b$, we'll write [a, b] for the closed interval with bounds a and $b : \{x \in L | a \leq x \leq b\}$. The closed intervals are also complete lattices.

It remains to prove that *P* is complete lattice.

Proof of the Knaster-Tarski theorem (cont.)

Let $W \subset P$ and $w = \bigvee W$. We construct a least upper bound of W in P. (The reasoning for the greatest lower bound is analogue.) For every $x \in W$, we have $x = f(x) \leq f(w)$, i.e., f(w) is an upper bound of W. Since w is the least upper bound of W, w < f(w). Furthermore, for $y \in [w, \bigvee L]$, we have $w \leq f(w) \leq f(y)$. Thus, $f([w, \bigvee L]) \subset [w, \bigvee L]$, and we can consider f to be a monotone function on the complete lattice $[w, \backslash L]$. Then, $v = \bigwedge \{x \in [w, \bigvee L] | f(x) \le x\}$ is the least fixpoint of f in $[w, \bigvee L]$. We show that v is the least upper bound of W in P. a) v is in P. b) v is an upper bound of W, because $v \in [w, \bigvee L]$, i.e., $w \leq v$. c) v is least. Let z be another upper bound of W in P. Then, $w < z, z \in [w, \sqrt{L}], z$ is fixpoint, hence v < z

ロトメ団トメミトメミト・注

Lattices in Isabelle

Induction

Monotony and Fixpoints

- ▶ mono $f \equiv \forall AB$. $A \leq B \longrightarrow f A \leq f B$ (mono_def)
- Usually subset relation as ordering
- Ifp $f \equiv Inf\{u | f u \le u\}$ (Ifp_def)
- mono $f \Longrightarrow lfp f = f (lfp f)$ (lfp_unfold)
- [|mono ?f; ?f (inf (lfp ?f) ?P) ≤ ?P|] ⇒ lfp?f ≤ ?P (lfp_induct)
- gfp $f \equiv Sup\{u | u \le f u\}$ (gfp_def)
- mono $f \Longrightarrow gfp \ f = f \ (gfp \ f)$ (gfp_unfold)
- ► [|mono ?f; ?X ≤ ?f (sup ?X (gfp ?f))|] ⇒?X ≤ gfp ?f (coinduct)

Chapter 6

Verifying Functions

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

-

・ロト ・回ト ・ヨト ・ヨト

Verifying Functions	
•00000000000000	

Motivation

Motivation

Verification

Verifying properties of functions is a fundamental task in SE. Hence it is an aspect of theorem proving. In particular, functions definitions allow to express recursive algorithms. Our focus here is on the definition of:

- terminiation/well-definedness properties
- functional properties, i.e., properties relating input parameters to the result (PR-properties).
- Example: A compiler can be considered as a partial function.

In general:

- specification = model + properties
- or
- specification = model_1 + model_2 + relationship

Conceptual aspects

Here: specification = function definition + PR-properties

Verify:

- well-definedness of function by:
 - often structural induction according to parameter types
 - more general: well-founded ordering on parameter space "show that parameters become smaller"
- PR-properties:
 - often structural induction according to parameter types
 - in general, proof technique depends on properties

- 세례에 세금에 세금에 드릴

Discussion

Verification

- works for the full parameter space (in contrast to testing)
- checks for consistency of models and properties
 - models may not reflect what programmer had in mind
 - properties may not reflect what programmer had in mind
 - proofs can have errors
- uses redundancy to find errors
- helps to improve the descriptions

-

イロン イロン イヨン イヨン

Discussion (cont.)

Formal verification

- avoids misunderstanding
- allows using tools
- avoids errors in proofs
- visabelle and others

-

・ロト ・回ト ・ヨト ・ヨト

Case study: greatest common devisor
6

Case study: greatest common devisor

Case study: greatest common devisor

see Gcd.thy

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ▲三 りへの

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

```
Case study: Quicksort
   Assumptions
   Given:
   datatype mapping = lt | ge
   fun eval :: "mapping => universe => universe => bool"
       where
     "eval ge xa ya = not(eval lt ya xa)"
     "[|eval lt ya xa|] ==> eval lt xa ya = False"
```

Modeling in Isabelle using type classes!

Case study: Quicksort

Shallow embedding of the algorithm:

- 문

イロト イヨト イヨト -

Case study: Quicksort (cont.)

```
fun qsplit ::
 "mapping => universe => universe list => universe
    list"
 where
 "qsplit xf xa Nil = Nil"
 "qsplit xf xa (ya#x) =
   (if eval xf ya xa then ya#qsplit xf xa x
                    else qsplit xf xa x)"
fun qsort :: "universe list => universe list" where
 "asort Nil = Nil"
 "gsort (p # 1) =
   qsort (qsplit lt p l) @ p # qsort (qsplit ge p l)"
```

Well-definedness/termination of qsort (1) and qsplit (2)

```
primrec counts :: "'a list => 'a => nat" where
"counts [] x = 0" |
"counts (y#yl) x = counts yl x +(if x=y then 1 else 0)
"
```

lemma qsort_counts(3): "counts xl = counts (qsort xl)"

```
fun qsorted :: " universe list => bool" where
  "qsorted [] = True"|
  "qsorted [x] = True"|
  "qsorted (a#b#l) = (eval ge b a \and qsorted (b#l))"
lemma qsort_sort_prop(4): "qsorted (qsort xl)"
```

Verification of the properties

Ad 1: qsplit is primitive recursive

Ad 2: Idea: length of parameter decreases

```
Auxiliary lemma qsplit_length:
    "length (qsplit f p l) <= length l"</pre>
```

~ Proof termination with "length" as measure

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 [] 臣 [

Verification of the properties (cont.)

```
Auxiliary lemma counts_concat:
"counts (l @ m) x = (counts l x) + (counts m x)"
```

```
Auxiliary theorem qsplit_lt_ge_count [iff]:
    "count (qsplit lt p l) x + count (qsplit ge p l) x =
        count l x"
```

Prove lemma "qsort_counts" by induction

Order lifting to lists

```
primrec qall :: "mapping => universe => universe list
      => bool" where
   "qall f p [] = True"
   | "qall f p (h # t) = (eval f h p \and qall f p t)"
```

Property 4 (cont.)

Auxiliary Properties

```
theorem qsplit_splits:
    "qall f p (qsplit f p 1)"
lemma qall_concat :
    "qall f p (a @ b) = (qall f p a \and qall f p b)"
theorem qsplit_qall :
    "qall f p 1 ==> qall f p (qsplit g q 1)"
theorem qsort_qall :
    "qall f p 1 ==> qall f p (qsort 1)"
```

```
prop(4): "sorted (qsort xl)"
```

```
Auxiliary lemmatas
```

»> Generic.QSort.thy



Application: Inductively Defined Sets

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

-

A (1) < A (1) < A (1) </p>

Defining sets inductively

Defining sets inductively: Repetition

SessionSlides6.1 starting slide 23

- Rule induction
- Demo inductively defined sets
- Inductive predicates
- Demo

Transition systems

Definition 7.1. TS

A transition system (TS) is a pair (Q,T) consisting of

a set Q of states;

• a binary relation $T \subset (Q * Q)$, usually called the transition relation (Other names: state transition system, unlabeled transition system)

Definition 7.2. LTS

A labeled transition system (LTS) over Act is a pair (Q,T) consisting of

- a set Q of states;
- A ternary relation T ⊂ (Q * Act * Q), usually called the transition relation, transitions written as q1 -l-> q2

Act is called the set of actions.

Transition systems (cont.)

Remark 7.3.

- The action labels express input, output, or an "explanation" of an internal state change.
- Finite automata are LTS.
- Often, transitions systems are equipped with a set of initial states or sets of initial and final states.
- ▶ Traces are sequences (qi) of states with $(qi, qi + 1) \in T$
- Behavior:: Set of traces beginning at initial states.
- Properties:: expressed in appropriate logic (PDL, CTL ...)

Lemma 7.4. Every LTS (Q, T) over Act can be expressed by a TS (Q', T') such that there is a mapping rep : $Q * Act \Rightarrow Q'$ with $q1 - l - > q2 \in T \iff \exists l' : (rep(q1, l'), rep(q2, l)) \in T'$

Proof: <exercise>

Modeling: Case study Elevator

Model of an elevator control system: Description

- Design the logic to move one lift between 3 floors satisfying:
- The lift has for each floor one button which, if pressed, causes the lift to visit that floor. It is cancelled when the lift visits the floor.
- Each floor has a button to request the lift. It is cancelled when the lift visits the floor.
- ► The lift remains in middle floor if no requests are pending.
- Properties
- All requests for floors from the lift must be serviced eventually.
- All requests from floors must be serviced eventually.

Modeling: Case study Elevator

```
Datatypes and actions
```

```
datatype floor = F0 | F1 | F2
(* actions *)
datatype action = Call floor (* input message *)
               | GoTo floor (* input message *)
               Open
                     (* output message *)
               | Move (* internal message *)
(* types for elevator state *)
datatype direction = UP
                         DW
datatype door = CL | OP
(* elevator state *)
"action * floor * direction * door * (floor set)"
(* where | last move | open/closed | what to serve *)
```

Datatypes and actions: Transition relation

inductive_set tr :: "(state * state) set" where "[$|g \leq T; \leq T$; ≤ 1 , $|f = g \leq d = 0$]] ==> $((a,f,r d,T),(Call g,f,r,d,T \setminus (union > {g})) \setminus (in > tr')$ "[$|g \leq notin > T$; $\leq not > (f = g \leq and > d = OP)$] ==> ((a,f,r,d,T),(GoTo g,f,r,d,T \<union> {g})) \<in> tr"| "f\<in>T==>((a,f,r,d,T),(Open,f,r,OP,T-{f}))\<in>tr"| "((a,F1,r,d,{F0}),(Move,F0,DW,CL,{F0})) \<in> tr"| "((a,F1,r,d,{F2}),(Move,F2,UP,CL,{F2})) \<in> tr"| "FO < notin > T == > ((a, FO, r, d, T), (Move, F1, UP, CL, T)) < in > tr"F2\<notin>T==>((a,F2,r,d,T),(Move,F1,DW,CL,T))\<in>tr "[|F1\<notin>T; F2\<in>T|] ==> ((a.F1.UP.d,T),(Move,F2,UP,CL,T)) \<in> tr"| "[|F1\<notin>T; F0\<in>T|] ==> ((a,F1,DW,d,T),(Move,F0,DW,CL,T)) \<in> tr"

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆ 三 ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶

Traces

```
Defining sets of traces
types trace = "nat => state"
coinductive_set traces :: "trace set" where
"[| t \<in> traces; (s, t 0) \<in> tr |] ==>
(\geq ambda > n. case n of 0 => s | Suc x => t x) <in>
   traces"
(* Functions on traces *)
definition head :: "trace => state" where
  "head t \<equiv> t 0"
definition drp :: "trace => nat => trace" where
  "drp t n \<equiv> (\<lambda>x. t (n + x))"
```

Properties of Traces

Important properties

- lemma [iff]: "drp (drp t n) m = drp t (n + m)"
- ▶ lemma drp_traces: " $t \in traces \implies drp \ t \ n \in traces$ "

< ロ > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Reasoning about finite transition systems

Logic for expressing properties of traces

- For every floor f: If f is a target floor, the elevator will eventually reach the floor and open the door.
- Always («To f» -> Finally («Op» and «At f»))
- ► ~→ Temporal logic. Here e.g. LTL
- Formulae built with Atoms, ¬, ∧, □, ◊
- Interpretations: Kripke structures (Q, I, T, L)
- ► A transition relation $T \subseteq Q * Q$ such that $\forall q \in Q. \exists q' \in Q. (q, q') \in T$
- ▶ a labeling (or interpretation) function $L: Q \rightarrow 2^{Atoms}$

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 [] 臣 [

Reasoning about finite transition systems

Remark 7.5.

- Since T is left-total, it is always possible to construct an infinite path through the Kripke structure. A deadlock state qd can be expressed by single outgoing edge back to qd itself.
- Labeling states (elevator)

```
datatype atom = Up | Op | At floor | To floor
```

```
fun L :: "state => atom => bool" where
"L (_, _, UP, _, _) Up = True" |
"L (_, _, DW, _, _) Up = False" |
"L (_, _, _, CL, _) Op = False" |
"L (_, _, _, OP, _) Op = True" |
"L (_, f, _, _, _) (At g) = (f = g)" |
"L (_, _, _, _, fs) (To f) = (f \<in> fs)"
```

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ◆□▶

Reasoning about finite transition systems (cont.)

- The labeling function L defines for each state q in Q the set L(s) of all atomic propositions that are valid in s.
- Semantics of LTL

```
primrec valid ::
"trace => formula => bool" ("(_ |= _)" [80, 80]
    80) where
    "t |= Atom a = ( a \<in> L (head t) )"
    "t |= Neg f = ( \<not> (t |= f) )"
    "t |= And f g = ( t |= f \<and> t |= g )"
    "t |= Always f = ( \<forall>n. drp t n |= f )"
    "t |= Finally f = ( \<exists>n. drp t n |= f )"
```

»> Elevator.thy

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ◆□▶

Chapter 8

Application: Programming Language Semantics

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

3

・ 同 ト ・ ヨ ト ・ ヨ ト

Programming Language Semantics

Software Foundations Book

- Material: http://sct.ethz.ch/teaching/ss2004/sps/lecture.html
- PM intro
- PM bigstep semantics
- Demo MyWhile.thy
- PM smallstep semantics
- Denotational semantics
- Axiomatic semantics: Hoare Logic.
- Demo MyHoare.thy

(4日) (4日) (4日) (日)

Why Formal Semantics?

- Programming language design
 - Formal verification of language properties
 - Reveal ambiguities
 - Support for standardization
- Implementation of programming languages
 - Compilers
 - Interpreters
 - Portability
- Reasoning about programs
 - Formal verification of program properties
 - Extended static checking

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 - p.7

Language Properties

Type safety:

In each execution state, a variable of type T holds a value of T or a subtype of T

- Very important question for language designers
- ► Example:

If String is a subtype of Object, should String[] be
a subtype of Object[]?

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 - 0.8

Language Properties

Type safety:

In each execution state, a variable of type T holds a value of T or a subtype of T

- Very important question for language designers
- ► Example:

If String is a subtype of Object, should String[] be
a subtype of Object[]?

<pre>void m(Object[] oa) {</pre>	<pre>String[] sa=new String[10];</pre>
<pre>oa[0]=new Integer(5);</pre>	m(sa);
}	String s = sa[0];

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 - 0.8

Introduction to Programming Language Semantics



Introduction to Programming Language Semantics



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Three Kinds of Semantics

- Operational semantics
 - Describes execution on an abstract machine
 - Describes how the effect is achieved
- Denotational semantics
 - Programs are regarded as functions in a mathematical domain
 - Describes only the effect, not how it is obtained
- Axiomatic semantics
 - Specifies properties of the effect of executing a program are expressed
 - Some aspects of the computation may be ignored

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 p.14

Operational Semantics

```
y := 1;
while not(x=1) do ( y := x*y; x := x-1 )
```

- "First we assign 1 to y, then we test whether x is 1 or not. If it is then we stop and otherwise we update y to be the product of x and the previous value of y and then we decrement x by 1. Now we test whether the new value of x is 1 or not..."
- Two kinds of operational semantics
 - Natural Semantics
 - Structural Operational Semantics

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 p 15

Denotational Semantics

```
y := 1;
while not(x=1) do ( y := x*y; x := x-1 )
```

- "The program computes a partial function from states to states: the final state will be equal to the initial state except that the value of x will be 1 and the value of y will be equal to the factorial of the value of x in the initial state"
- Two kinds of denotational semantics
 - Direct Style Semantics
 - Continuation Style Semantics

Peter Müller—Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 = p.16

Axiomatic Semantics

```
y := 1;
while not(x=1) do ( y := x*y; x := x-1 )
```

- "If x= n holds before the program is executed then y= n! will hold when the execution terminates (if it terminates)"
- Two kinds of axiomatic semantics
 - Partial correctness
 - Total correctness



Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 p 17

Introduction to Programming Language Semantics

Abstraction

Concrete language implementation

Operational semantics

Denotational semantics

Axiomatic semantics

Abstract descrption

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 p.18

Selection Criteria

- Constructs of the programming language
 - Imperative
 - Functional
 - Concurrent
 - Object-oriented
 - Non-deterministic
 - Etc.

- Application of the semantics
 - Understanding the language
 - Program verification
 - Prototyping
 - Compiler construction
 - Program analysis
 - Etc.



Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 p 19

The Language IMP

- Expressions
 - Boolean and arithmetic expressions
 - No side-effects in expressions
- Variables
 - All variables range over integers
 - All variables are initialized
 - No global variables
- IMP does not include
 - Heap allocation and pointers
 - Variable declarations
 - Procedures
 - Concurrency

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 p.30
Syntax of IMP: Characters and Tokens

Characters

Tokens

Ident	= Letter { Letter Digit }
Integer	= Digit { Digit }
Var	= Ident

Syntax of IMP: Expressions

Arithmetic expressions

Boolean expressions

Bexp	= Bexp 'or' Bexp Bexp 'and' Bexp
	'not' Bexp Aexp RelOp Aexp
RelOp	= '=' '#' '<' '<=' '>' '>='



Introduction to Programming Language Semantics

Syntax of IMP: Statemens

Stm = 'skip'
| Var ':=' Aexp
| Stm ';' Stm
| 'if' Bexp 'then' Stm 'else' Stm 'end'
| 'while' Bexp 'do' Stm 'end'

Notation

Meta-variables (written in *italic* font)

x, y, z	for variables (Var)
e, e', e_1, e_2	for arithmetic expressions (Aexp)
b, b_1, b_2	for boolean expressions (Bexp)
s, s', s_1, s_2	for statements (Stm)

Keywords are written in typewriter font

Application: Programming Language Semantics

Introduction to Programming Language Semantics

Syntax of IMP: Example

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Semantic Categories

Syntactic category: Integer Semantic category: $Val = \mathbb{Z}$



- Semantic functions map elements of syntactic categories to elements of semantic categories
- To define the semantics of IMP, we need semantic functions for
 - Arithmetic expressions (syntactic category Aexp)
 - Boolean expressions (syntactic category Bexp)
 - Statements (syntactic category Stm)

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich





- The meaning of an expression depends on the values bound to the variables that occur in it
- A state associates a value to each variable

State : Var \rightarrow Val

• We represent a state σ as a finite function

 $\sigma = \{x_1 \mapsto v_1, x_2 \mapsto v_2, \dots, x_n \mapsto v_n\}$

where x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n are different elements of Var and v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n are elements of Val.

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Semantics of Arithmetic Expressions

The semantic function

 $\mathcal{A}:\mathsf{Aexp} o\mathsf{State} o\mathsf{Val}$

maps an arithmetic expression e and a state σ to a value $\mathcal{A}[\![e]\!]\sigma$

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{A}[\![x]\!]\sigma &= \sigma(x) \\ \mathcal{A}[\![i]\!]\sigma &= i & \text{for } i \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \mathcal{A}[\![e_1 \ op \ e_2]\!]\sigma &= \mathcal{A}[\![e_1]\!]\sigma \ \overline{op} \ \mathcal{A}[\![e_2]\!]\sigma & \text{for } op \in \mathsf{Op} \end{split}$$

 \overline{op} is the operation Val imes Val ightarrow Val corresponding to op

Eldgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Semantics of Boolean Expressions

The semantic function

 $\mathcal{B}: \mathsf{Bexp} o \mathsf{State} o \mathsf{Bool}$

maps a boolean expression b and a state σ to a truth value $\mathcal{B}[\![b]\!]\sigma$

$$\mathcal{B}\llbracket e_1 \ op \ e_2 \rrbracket \sigma = \begin{cases} tt & \text{if } \mathcal{A}\llbracket e_1 \rrbracket \sigma \ \overline{op} \ \mathcal{A}\llbracket e_2 \rrbracket \sigma \\ ff & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

 $\mathit{op} \in \mathsf{RelOp}$ and $\overline{\mathit{op}}$ is the relation $\mathsf{Val} \times \mathsf{Val}$ corresponding to op

Boolean Expressions (cont'd)

$$\mathcal{B}\llbracket b_1 \text{ or } b_2 \rrbracket \sigma = \begin{cases} tt & \text{if } \mathcal{B}\llbracket b_1 \rrbracket \sigma = tt \text{ or } \mathcal{B}\llbracket b_2 \rrbracket \sigma = tt \\ ff & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$
$$\mathcal{B}\llbracket b_1 \text{ and } b_2 \rrbracket \sigma = \begin{cases} tt & \text{if } \mathcal{B}\llbracket b_1 \rrbracket \sigma = tt \text{ and } \mathcal{B}\llbracket b_2 \rrbracket \sigma = tt \\ ff & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$
$$\mathcal{B}\llbracket \text{not } b \rrbracket \sigma = \begin{cases} tt & \text{if } \mathcal{B}\llbracket b \rrbracket \sigma = ff \\ ff & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Eldgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Operational Semantics of Statements

Evaluation of an expression in a state yields a value

$$\frac{x + 2 * y}{\mathcal{A} : \mathsf{Aexp} \to \mathsf{State} \to \mathsf{Val}}$$

Execution of a statement modifies the state

 Operational semantics describe how the state is modified during the execution of a statement

Big-Step and Small-Step Semantics

- Big-step semantics describe how the overall results of the executions are obtained
 - Natural semantics
- Small-step semantics describe how the individual steps of the computations take place
 - Structural operational semantics
 - Abstract state machines

Transition Systems

- ▶ A transition system is a tuple $(\Gamma, T, \triangleright)$
 - Γ : a set of configurations
 - *T*: a set of terminal configurations, $T \subseteq \Gamma$
 - \triangleright : a transition relation, $\triangleright \subseteq \Gamma \times \Gamma$
- Example: Finite automaton

$$\begin{array}{ll} \Gamma & = \{ \langle w, S \rangle \mid w \in \{a, b, c\}^*, S \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\} \} \\ T & = \{ \langle \epsilon, S \rangle \mid S \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\} \} \\ \rhd & = \{ (\langle aw, 1 \rangle \rightarrow \langle w, 2 \rangle), (\langle aw, 1 \rangle \rightarrow \langle w, 3 \rangle), \\ (\langle bw, 2 \rangle \rightarrow \langle w, 4 \rangle), (\langle cw, 3 \rangle \rightarrow \langle w, 4 \rangle) \} \end{array}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Transitions in Natural Semantics

- ▶ Two types of configurations for operational semantics
 - 1. $\langle s, \sigma \rangle$, which represents that the statement s is to be executed in state σ
 - 2. σ , which represents a terminal state
- \blacktriangleright The transition relation \rightarrow describes how executions take place
 - Typical transition: $\langle s,\sigma\rangle\to\sigma'$
 - Example: $\langle \texttt{skip}, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma$

$$\begin{split} \Gamma &= \{ \langle s, \sigma \rangle \mid s \in \mathsf{Stm}, \sigma \in \mathsf{State} \} \cup \mathsf{State} \\ T &= \mathsf{State} \\ &\to \subseteq \{ \langle s, \sigma \rangle \mid s \in \mathsf{Stm}, \sigma \in \mathsf{State} \} \times \mathsf{State} \end{split}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Rules

Transition relation is specified by rules

$$rac{arphi_1,\ldots,arphi_n}{\psi}$$
 if Condition

where $\varphi_1, \ldots, \varphi_n$ and ψ are transitions

Meaning of the rule

If *Condition* and $\varphi_1, \ldots, \varphi_n$ then ψ

Terminology

- $\varphi_1, \ldots, \varphi_n$ are called **premises**
- ψ is called **conclusion**
- A rule without premises is called axiom

Notation

- \blacktriangleright Updating States: $\sigma[y\mapsto v]$ is the function that
 - overrides the association of y in σ by $y\mapsto v$ or
 - adds the new association $y\mapsto v$ to σ

$$(\sigma[y\mapsto v])(x) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} v & \text{if } x=y \\ \sigma(x) & \text{if } x\neq y \end{array} \right.$$

Natural Semantics of IMP

skip does not modify the state

 $\langle \mathtt{skip}, \sigma \rangle o \sigma$

• x := e assigns the value of e to variable e

$$\overline{\langle x \colon = e, \sigma \rangle} \to \sigma[x \mapsto \mathcal{A}\llbracket e \rrbracket \sigma]$$

- ▶ Sequential composition s_1 ; s_2
 - First, s_1 is executed in state σ , leading to σ'
 - Then s_2 is executed in state σ'

$$\frac{\langle s_1, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma', \langle s_2, \sigma' \rangle \to \sigma''}{\langle s_1; s_2, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma''}$$

EIGenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Natural Semantics of IMP (cont'd)

- ▶ Conditional statement if b then s_1 else s_2 end
 - If b holds, s_1 is executed
 - If b does not hold, s_2 is executed

$$\frac{\langle s_1,\sigma\rangle\to\sigma'}{\langle \texttt{if}\ b\ \texttt{then}\ s_1\ \texttt{else}\ s_2\ \texttt{end},\sigma\rangle\to\sigma'} \quad \text{if}\ \mathcal{B}[\![b]\!]\sigma=tt$$

$$\frac{\langle s_2, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma'}{\langle \texttt{if } b \texttt{ then } s_1 \texttt{ else } s_2 \texttt{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma'} \quad \texttt{if } \mathcal{B}[\![b]\!] \sigma = f\!f$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Natural Semantics of IMP (cont'd)

- ▶ Loop statement while *b* do *s* end
 - If b holds, s is executed once, leading to state σ^\prime
 - Then the whole while-statement is executed again σ^\prime

$$\frac{\langle s,\sigma\rangle\to\sigma', \langle \texttt{while}\;b\;\texttt{do}\;s\;\texttt{end},\sigma'\rangle\to\sigma''}{\langle\texttt{while}\;b\;\texttt{do}\;s\;\texttt{end},\sigma\rangle\to\sigma''} \quad \text{if}\;\mathcal{B}[\![b]\!]\sigma=tt$$

- If *b* does not hold, the while-statement does not modify the state

$$\overline{\langle \texttt{while } b \texttt{ do } s \texttt{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma} \quad \text{if } \mathcal{B}[\![b]\!]\sigma = f\!f$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Rule Instantiations

- Rules are actually rule schemes
 - Meta-variables stand for arbitrary variables, expressions, statements, states, etc.
 - To apply rules, they have to be **instantiated** by selecting particular variables, expressions, statements, states, etc.
- Assignment rule scheme

$$\langle x : = e, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma[x \mapsto \mathcal{A}\llbracket e \rrbracket \sigma]$$

Assignment rule instance

$$\langle \mathbf{v}:=\mathbf{v+1}, \{\mathbf{v}\mapsto 3\}\rangle \rightarrow \{\mathbf{v}\mapsto 4\}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Derivations: Example

What is the final state if statement

$$z:=x; x:=y; y:=z$$

is executed in state { $x \mapsto 5, y \mapsto 7, z \mapsto 0$ } (abbreviated by [5,7,0])?

$$\begin{array}{c} \langle \mathbf{z} := \mathbf{x}, [5,7,0] \rangle \to [5,7,5], \langle \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}, [5,7,5] \rangle \to [7,7,5] \\ \hline \langle \mathbf{z} := \mathbf{x} : \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}, [5,7,0] \rangle \to [7,7,5] \\ \hline \langle \mathbf{y} := \mathbf{z}, [7,7,5] \rangle \to [7,5,5] \\ \hline \langle \mathbf{z} := \mathbf{x} : \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y} : \mathbf{y} := \mathbf{z}, [5,7,0] \rangle \to [7,5,5] \end{array}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Derivation Trees

- ▶ Rule instances can be combined to derive a transition $\langle s, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow \sigma'$
- The result is a derivation tree
 - The root is the transition $\langle s,\sigma\rangle\to\sigma'$
 - The leaves are axiom instances
 - The internal nodes are conclusions of rule instances and have the corresponding premises as immediate children
- The conditions of all instantiated rules must be satisfied
- There can be several derivations for one transition (non-deterministic semantics)

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Termination

- For the execution of a statement s in state σ
 - terminates iff there is a state σ' such that $\langle s, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow \sigma'$
 - **loops** iff there is no state σ' such that $\langle s, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow \sigma'$
- A statement s
 - always terminates if the execution in a state σ terminates for all choices of σ
 - always loops if the execution in a state σ loops for all choices of σ

Semantic Equivalence

Definition

Two statements s_1 and s_2 are semantically equivalent (denoted by $s_1 \equiv s_2$) if the following property holds for all states σ, σ' : $\langle s_1, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow \sigma' \Leftrightarrow \langle s_2, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow \sigma'$

Example

while b do s end \equiv if b then s; while b do s end

Structural Operational Semantics

- The emphasis is on the individual steps of the execution
 - Execution of assignments
 - Execution of tests
- Describing small steps of the execution allows one to express the order of execution of individual steps
 - Interleaving computations
 - Evaluation order for expressions (not shown in the course)
- Describing always the next small step allows one to express properties of looping programs

Transitions in SOS

- The configurations are the same as for natural semantics
- \blacktriangleright The transition relation \rightarrow_1 can have two forms
- ⟨s, σ⟩ →₁ ⟨s', σ'⟩: the execution of s from σ is not completed and the remaining computation is expressed by the intermediate configuration ⟨s', σ'⟩
- ⟨s, σ⟩ →₁ σ': the execution of s from σ has terminated and the final state is σ'
- A transition (s, σ) →₁ γ describes the first step of the execution of s from σ

Transition System

$$\begin{split} \Gamma &= \{ \langle s, \sigma \rangle \mid s \in \mathsf{Stm}, \sigma \in \mathsf{State} \} \cup \mathsf{State} \\ T &= \mathsf{State} \\ &\rightarrow_1 \subseteq \{ \langle s, \sigma \rangle \mid s \in \mathsf{Stm}, \sigma \in \mathsf{State} \} \times \Gamma \end{split}$$

▶ We say that $\langle s, \sigma \rangle$ is stuck if there is no γ such that $\langle s, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow_1 \gamma$

SOS of IMP

skip does not modify the state

 $\langle \mathtt{skip}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \sigma$

• x := e assigns the value of e to variable x

$$\langle x : = e, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \sigma[x \mapsto \mathcal{A}\llbracket e \rrbracket \sigma]$$

- skip and assignment require only one step
- Rules are analogous to natural semantics

$$\langle \texttt{skip}, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma$$

$$\langle x := e, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma[x \mapsto \mathcal{A}\llbracket e \rrbracket \sigma]$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

SOS of IMP: Sequential Composition

- ▶ Sequential composition s_1 ; s_2
- ► First step of executing s₁; s₂ is the first step of executing s₁
- ▶ s₁ is executed in one step

$$\frac{\langle s_1, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \sigma'}{\langle s_1; s_2, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s_2, \sigma' \rangle}$$

▶ s₁ is executed in several steps

$$\frac{\langle s_1, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s'_1, \sigma' \rangle}{\langle s_1; s_2, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s'_1; s_2, \sigma' \rangle}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

SOS of IMP: Conditional Statement

▶ The first step of executing if b then s_1 else s_2 end is to determine the outcome of the test and thereby which branch to select

$$\begin{array}{ll} \langle \text{if } b \text{ then } s_1 \text{ else } s_2 \text{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s_1, \sigma \rangle & \text{if } \mathcal{B}[\![b]\!] \sigma = tt \\ \hline \\ \langle \text{if } b \text{ then } s_1 \text{ else } s_2 \text{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s_2, \sigma \rangle & \text{if } \mathcal{B}[\![b]\!] \sigma = f\!f \end{array}$$

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 - p.105

If $\mathcal{B} \| v \| \sigma = \Pi$

Alternative for Conditional Statement

► The first step of executing if b then s₁ else s₂ end is the first step of the branch determined by the outcome of the test

$$\frac{\langle s_1, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \sigma'}{\text{if } b \text{ then } s_1 \text{ else } s_2 \text{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \sigma'} \quad \text{if } \mathcal{B}[\![b]]$$

$$\mathcal{B}\llbracket b \rrbracket \sigma = tt$$

$$\frac{\langle s_1, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s'_1, \sigma' \rangle}{\langle \text{if } b \text{ then } s_1 \text{ else } s_2 \text{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s'_1, \sigma' \rangle} \quad \text{if } \mathcal{B}\llbracket b \rrbracket \sigma = tt$$

and two similar rules for $\mathcal{B}[\![b]\!]\sigma=f\!f$

- Alternatives are equivalent for IMP
- Choice is important for languages with parallel execution

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich



Recall that while b do s end and if b then s; while b do s end else skip end are semantically equivalent in the natural semantics

Alternatives for Loop Statement

The first step is to decide the outcome of the test and thereby whether to unrole the body of the loop or to terminate

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle \texttt{while } b \texttt{ do } s \texttt{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle s \texttt{\textit{i}} \texttt{ while } b \texttt{ do } s \texttt{ end}, \sigma \rangle \\ & \quad \texttt{if } \mathcal{B}[\![b]\!] \sigma = tt \end{aligned}$$

 $\langle \texttt{while } b \texttt{ do } s \texttt{ end}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \sigma \quad \text{if } \mathcal{B}\llbracket b \rrbracket \sigma = f\!\!f$

- Or combine with the alternative semantics of the conditional statement
- Alternatives are equivalent for IMP

Derivation Sequences

- A derivation sequence of a statement s starting in state σ is a sequence γ₀, γ₁, γ₂,..., where
 - $\gamma_0 = \langle s, \sigma \rangle$
 - $\gamma_i \rightarrow_1 \gamma_{i+1}$ for $0 \leq i$
- A derivation sequence is either finite or infinite
 - Finite derivation sequences end with a configuration that is either a terminal configuration or a stuck configuration
- Notation
 - $\gamma_0 \to_1^i \gamma_i$ indicates that there are i steps in the execution from γ_0 to γ_i
 - $\gamma_0 \rightarrow_1^* \gamma_i$ indicates that there is a finite number of steps in the execution from γ_0 to γ_i
 - $\gamma_0 \rightarrow_1^i \gamma_i$ and $\gamma_0 \rightarrow_1^* \gamma_i$ need not be derivation sequences

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Derivation Sequences: Example

What is the final state if statement

$$z:=x; x:=y; y:=z$$

is executed in state $\{x \mapsto 5, y \mapsto 7, z \mapsto 0\}$?

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathbf{z} := \mathbf{x}; \quad \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}; \quad \mathbf{y} := \mathbf{z}, \{ \mathbf{x} \mapsto 5, \mathbf{y} \mapsto 7, \mathbf{z} \mapsto 0 \} \rangle \\ \rightarrow_1 \langle \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}; \quad \mathbf{y} := \mathbf{z}, \{ \mathbf{x} \mapsto 5, \mathbf{y} \mapsto 7, \mathbf{z} \mapsto 5 \} \rangle \\ \rightarrow_1 \langle \mathbf{y} := \mathbf{z}, \{ \mathbf{x} \mapsto 7, \mathbf{y} \mapsto 7, \mathbf{z} \mapsto 5 \} \rangle \\ \rightarrow_1 \{ \mathbf{x} \mapsto 7, \mathbf{y} \mapsto 5, \mathbf{z} \mapsto 5 \} \end{aligned}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Derivation Trees

- Derivation trees explain why transitions take place
- For the first step

$$\langle z := x; x := y; y := z, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow_1 \langle x := y; y := z, \sigma[z \mapsto 5] \rangle$$

the derivation tree is

$$\begin{array}{c} \langle \mathbf{z} := \mathbf{x}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \sigma[\mathbf{z} \mapsto 5] \\ \hline \langle \mathbf{z} := \mathbf{x}; \ \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}, \sigma[\mathbf{z} \mapsto 5] \rangle \\ \hline \langle \mathbf{z} := \mathbf{x}; \ \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}; \ \mathbf{y} := \mathbf{z}, \sigma \rangle \to_1 \langle \mathbf{x} := \mathbf{y}; \ \mathbf{y} := \mathbf{z}, \sigma[\mathbf{z} \mapsto 5] \rangle \end{array}$$

► z:=x; (x:=y; y:=z) would lead to a simpler tree with only one rule application

Peter Müller-Semantics of Programming Languages, SS04 - p.111

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich

Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich
Small step semantics

Derivation Sequences and Trees

- Natural (big-step) semantics
 - The execution of a statement (sequence) is described by one big transition
 - The big transition can be seen as trivial derivation sequence with exactly one transition
 - The derivation tree explains why this transition takes place
- Structural operational (small-step) semantics
 - The execution of a statement (sequence) is described by one or more transitions
 - Derivation sequences are important
 - Derivation trees justify each individual step in a derivation sequence

Small step semantics

Termination

- For the execution of a statement s in state σ
 - terminates iff there is a finite derivation sequence starting with $\langle s,\sigma\rangle$
 - loops iff there is an infinite derivation sequence starting with $\langle s,\sigma\rangle$
- For the execution of a statement s in state σ
 - terminates successfully if $\langle s, \sigma \rangle \rightarrow_1^* \sigma'$
 - In IMP, an execution terminates successfully iff it terminates (no stuck configurations)

Small step semantics

Comparison: Summary

Natural Semantics

- Local variable declarations and procedures can be modeled easily
- No distinction between abortion and looping
- Non-determinism suppresses looping (if possible)
- Parallelism cannot be modeled

Structural Operational Semantics

- Local variable declarations and procedures require modeling the execution stack
- Distinction between abortion and looping
- Non-determinism does not suppress looping
- ▶ Parallelism can be modeled

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Motivation

- Operational semantics is at a rather low abstraction level
 - Some arbitrariness in choice of rules (e.g., size of steps)
 - Syntax involved in description of behavior
- Semantic equivalence in natural semantics

$$\langle s_1, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma' \Leftrightarrow \langle s_2, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma'$$

- Idea
 - We can describe the behavior on an abstract level if we are only interested in equivalence
 - We specify only the partial function on states

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Approach

- Denotational semantics describes the effect of a computation
- A semantic function is defined for each syntactic construct
 - maps syntactic construct to a mathematical object, often a function
 - the mathematical object describes the effect of executing the syntactic construct

Compositionality

- In denotational semantics, semantic functions are defined compositionally
- There is a semantic clause for each of the basis elements of the syntactic category
- For each method of constructing a composite element (in the syntactic category) there is a semantic clause defined in terms of the semantic function applied to the immediate constituents of the composite element

Examples

▶ The semantic functions A : Aexp → State → Val and B : Bexp → State → Bool are denotational definitions

$$\begin{array}{ll} \mathcal{A}\llbracket x \rrbracket \sigma &= \sigma(x) \\ \mathcal{A}\llbracket i \rrbracket \sigma &= i & \text{for } i \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \mathcal{A}\llbracket e_1 \ op \ e_2 \rrbracket \sigma &= \mathcal{A}\llbracket e_1 \rrbracket \sigma \ \overline{op} \ \mathcal{A}\llbracket e_2 \rrbracket \sigma & \text{for } op \in \text{Op} \end{array}$$

$$\mathcal{B}\llbracket e_1 \ op \ e_2 \rrbracket \sigma = \begin{cases} tt & \text{if } \mathcal{A}\llbracket e_1 \rrbracket \sigma \ \overline{op} \ \mathcal{A}\llbracket e_2 \rrbracket \sigma \\ ff & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Counterexamples

► The semantic functions S_{NS} and S_{SOS} are not denotational definitions because they are not defined compositionally

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{S}_{NS} : \mathsf{Stm} & \to (\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State}) \\ \mathcal{S}_{NS}[\![s]\!] \sigma = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \sigma' & \text{if } \langle s, \sigma \rangle \to \sigma' \\ & \text{undefined} & \text{otherwise} \end{array} \right. \end{split}$$

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{S}_{SOS} &: \mathsf{Stm} \to (\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State}) \\ \mathcal{S}_{SOS}[\![s]\!] \sigma &= \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \sigma' & \text{if } \langle s, \sigma \rangle \to_1^* \sigma' \\ & \text{undefined otherwise} \end{array} \right. \end{split}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Semantic Functions
\blacktriangleright The effect of executing a statement is described by the partial function \mathcal{S}_{DS}
$\mathcal{S}_{DS}: Stm o (State \hookrightarrow State)$
Derticlity is needed to madel non termination

- Partiality is needed to model non-termination
- ► The effects of evaluating expressions is defined by the functions A and B

Direct Style Semantics of IMP

skip does not modify the state

 $\mathcal{S}_{DS}[\texttt{skip}] = id$ id: State
ightarrow State $id(\sigma) = \sigma$

• x := e assigns the value of e to variable x

$$\mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket x := e \rrbracket \sigma = \sigma [x \mapsto \mathcal{A}\llbracket e \rrbracket \sigma]$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Direct Style Semantics of IMP (cont'd)

▶ Sequential composition s_1 ; s_2

$$\mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket s_1$$
 ; $s_2
rbracket = \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket s_2
rbracket \circ \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket s_1
rbracket$

- ► Function composition is defined in a strict way
 - If one of the functions is undefined on the given argument then the composition is undefined

$$(f \circ g)\sigma = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} f(g(\sigma)) & \text{if } g(\sigma) \neq \text{undefined} \\ & \text{and } f(g(\sigma)) \neq \text{undefined} \\ & \text{undefined} & \text{otherwise} \end{array} \right.$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Direct Style Semantics of IMP (cont'd)

▶ Conditional statement if b then s_1 else s_2 end

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket \texttt{if } b \texttt{ then } s_1 \texttt{ else } s_2 \texttt{ end} \rrbracket = \\ cond(\mathcal{B}\llbracket b \rrbracket, \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket s_1 \rrbracket, \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket s_2 \rrbracket) \end{aligned}$$

- ▶ The function *cond*
 - takes the semantic functions for the condition and the two statements
 - when supplied with a state selects the second or third argument depending on the first

 $\begin{array}{l} \mathit{cond}: (\mathsf{State} \to \mathsf{Bool}) \times (\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State}) \times (\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State}) \to \\ (\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State}) \end{array}$

Eldgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich



Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Semantics of Loop: Observations

- Defining the semantics of while is difficult
- ► The semantics of while b do s end must be equal to if b then s; while b do s end else skip end
- This requirement yields:

$$\mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket \texttt{while } b \texttt{ do } s \texttt{ end} \rrbracket = \\ cond(\mathcal{B}\llbracket b \rrbracket, \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket \texttt{while } b \texttt{ do } s \texttt{ end} \rrbracket \circ \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket s \rrbracket, id)$$

 We cannot use this equation as a definition because it is not compositional

Functionals and Fixed Points

 $\mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![\texttt{while } b \text{ do } s \text{ end}]\!] = cond(\mathcal{B}[\![b]\!], \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![\texttt{while } b \text{ do } s \text{ end}]\!] \circ \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![s]\!], id)$

▶ The above equation has the form g = F(g)

- $g = \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![\texttt{while} \ b \ \texttt{do} \ s \ \texttt{end}]\!]$
- $F(g) = cond(\mathcal{B}\llbracket b \rrbracket, g \circ \mathcal{S}_{DS}\llbracket s \rrbracket, id)$
- ► F is a functional (a function from functions to functions)
- ► S_{DS} [[while b do s end]] is a fixed point of the functional F

Direct Style Semantics of IMP: Loops

▶ Loop statement while *b* do *s* end

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![\texttt{while } b \text{ do } s \text{ end}]\!] &= FIX \ F \\ \texttt{where } F(g) &= cond(\mathcal{B}[\![b]\!], g \circ \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![s]\!], id) \end{split}$$

▶ We write *FIX F* to denote the fixed point of the functional *F*:

$$FIX : ((\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State}) \to (\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State})) \\ \to (\mathsf{State} \hookrightarrow \mathsf{State})$$

► This definition of S_{DS} [[while b do s end]] is compositional

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Example

Consider the statement

while x # 0 do skip end

The functional for this loop is defined by

$$\begin{split} F'(g)\sigma &= cond(\mathcal{B}[\![\mathbf{x} \# 0]\!], g \circ \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![\mathbf{skip}]\!], id)\sigma \\ &= cond(\mathcal{B}[\![\mathbf{x} \# 0]\!], g \circ id, id)\sigma \\ &= cond(\mathcal{B}[\![\mathbf{x} \# 0]\!], g, id)\sigma \\ &= \begin{cases} g(\sigma) & \text{if } \sigma(x) \neq 0 \\ \sigma & \text{if } \sigma(x) = 0 \end{cases} \end{split}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

The function

$$g_1(\sigma) = \begin{cases} \text{ undefined } \text{ if } \sigma(x) \neq 0 \\ \sigma & \text{ if } \sigma(x) = 0 \end{cases}$$

is a fixed point of F'

• The function $g_2(\sigma) =$ undefined is not a fixed point for F'

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich



$$\begin{split} \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![\texttt{while } b \text{ do } s \text{ end}]\!] &= FIX \ F \\ \texttt{where } F(g) &= cond(\mathcal{B}[\![b]\!], g \circ \mathcal{S}_{DS}[\![s]\!], id) \end{split}$$

- ► The function S_{DS} [while b do s end] is well-defined if FIXF defines a unique fixed point for the functional F
 - There are functionals that have more than one fixed point
 - There are functionals that have no fixed point at all



Examples

 F' from the previous example has more than one fixed point

$$F'(g)\sigma = \begin{cases} g(\sigma) & \text{if } \sigma(x) \neq 0\\ \sigma & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- Every function g': State \hookrightarrow State with $g'(\sigma)=\sigma$ if $\sigma(x)=0$ is a fixed point for F'
- ▶ The functional F_1 has no fixed point if $g_1 \neq g_2$

$$F_1(g) = \begin{cases} g_1 & \text{if } g = g_2 \\ g_2 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

Hoare Logic

Hoare axioms and rules for simple while languages

- { P } skip { P }
- { P[x/e] } x := e { P }
- $\blacktriangleright \{P\} c1 \{R\}, \{R\} c2 \{Q\} ==> \{P\} c1; c2 \{Q\}$
- ▶ { P \land b } c1 { Q } , { P \land !b } c2 { Q } ==>

 $\{ \ P \ \}$ if b then c1 else c2 $\{ \ Q \ \}$

・ロット (四) ・ (日) ・ (日) ・ (日)

- ▶ { INV \land b } c { INV } ==> { INV } while b do c { INV \land !b }
- ▶ $P \rightarrow P'$, { P' } **c** { Q' }, Q' → Q ==> { P } **c** { Q }
- Semantics of the Hoare Logic:
- ▶ { P } **c** { Q } == (ALL s. (P(s) \land s -c-> t) -> P(t))

Hoare Logic

Hoare Logic

E	xample
{	0 <= x } c := 0 ;
	<pre>sq := 1; WHILE sq <= x DO (*INV=(c*c <= x&sq=(c+1)*(c+1))*) c := c + 1;</pre>
{	<pre>sq := sq + (2*c + 1); c*c <= x & x < (c+1)*(c+1) }</pre>

Demo: MyHoare.thy

-2

イロト イロト イヨト イヨト



Application: Verification of distributed systems

- イロト イロト イヨト イヨト 一戸 - のへの

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Distributed Termination Detection : Dijkstra

Example 9.1. Implement the following termination detection protocol:



Edsger W. Dijkstra, W. H. J. Feijen, and A.J.M. van Gasteren. Derivation of a Termination Detection Algorithm for Distributed Computations. IPL 16 (1983).

-

《曰》《卽》《臣》《臣》

Assumptions for distributed termination detection

Rules for a probe

- Rule 0 When active, $Machine_{i+1}$ keeps the token; when passive, it hands over the token to $Machine_i$.
- Rule 1 A machine sending a message makes itself red.
- Rule 2 When $Machine_{i+1}$ propagates the probe, it hands over a red token to $Machine_i$ when it is red itself, whereas while being white it leaves the color of the token unchanged.
- Rule 3 After the completion of an unsuccessful probe, *Machine* ₀ initiates a next probe.
- Rule 4 *Machine* $_0$ initiates a probe by making itself white and sending to *Machine*_{n-1} a white token.
- Rule 5 Upon transmission of the token to $Machine_i$, $Machine_{i+1}$ becomes white. (Notice that the original color of $Machine_{i+1}$ may have affected the color of the token).

・ロット (四) ・ (日) ・ (日) ・ (日)

Correctness of the abstract version: Dijkstra

Assumptions

The machines constitute a closed system, i.e. messages can only be dispatched among each other (no outside messages). The system in the initial state can have any color and several machines can be active. The token is located in the 0'th. machine.

- The given rules describe the transfer of the token and the coloration of the machines upon certain activities.
- The task is to determine a state in which all the machines are passive (not active). This is a stable state of the system, because only active machines can dispatch messages and passive machines can only become active by receiving a message.

The invariant: Let t be the position on which the token is, then following invariant holds:

 $(\forall i : t < i < n \text{ Machine}_i \text{ is passive}) \lor (\exists j : 0 \le j \le t \text{ Machine}_j \text{ is red}) \lor (Token \text{ is red})$

ロト 不得 とくき とくき とうき

Dijkstras termination detection algorithm

Distributed Termination Detection: Correctness

 $(\forall i : t < i < n \text{ Machine}_i \text{ is passive}) \lor (\exists j : 0 \le j \le t \text{ Machine}_j \text{ is red}) \lor (Token \text{ is red})$

Correctness argument

When the token reaches $Machine_o$, t = 0 and the invariant holds. If

 $(Machine_o \text{ is passive}) \land (Machine_o \text{ is white}) \land (Token \text{ is white})$ then

 $(\forall i : 0 < i < n \text{ Machine}_i \text{ is passive})$ must hold, i.e. termination.

Proof of the invariant Induction over t:

The case t = n - 1 is easy.

Assume the invariant is valid for 0 < t < n, prove it is valid for t - 1.

・ロット (四) ((日) (日) (日)

Distributed Abstract State Machines: Model

Signature:

static

 $\begin{array}{l} COLOR = \{red, white\} \quad TOKEN = \{redToken, whiteToken\} \\ MACHINE = \{0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1\} \\ next : MACHINE \rightarrow MACHINE \\ e.g. with next(0) = n - 1, next(n - 1) = n - 2, \ldots, next(1) = 0 \end{array}$

 $\begin{array}{l} \textbf{controlled} \\ \textbf{color}: \textit{MACHINE} \rightarrow \textit{COLOR} \quad \textit{token}: \textit{MACHINE} \rightarrow \textit{TOKEN} \\ \textit{RedTokenEvent}, \textit{WhiteTokenEvent}: \textit{MACHINE} \rightarrow \textit{BOOL} \end{array}$

monitored

 $\begin{array}{l} \textit{Active}:\textit{MACHINE} \rightarrow \textit{BOOL} \\ \textit{SendMessageEvent}:\textit{MACHINE} \rightarrow \textit{BOOL} \end{array}$

・ロット (四) ・ (日) ・ (日) ・ (日)

Distributed Termination Detection: DASM-Procedure

Macros: (Rule definitions)

ReactOnEvents(m : MACHINE) =
 if RedTokenEvent(m) then
 token(m) := redToken
 RedTokenEvent(m) := undef
 if WhiteTokenEvent(m) then
 token(m) := whiteToken
 WhiteTokenEvent(m) := undef
 if SendMessageEvent(m) then color(m) := red Rule 1
 Forward(m : MACHINE, t : TOKEN) =
 if t = whiteToken then

WhiteTokenEvent(next(m)) := true

else

RedTokenEvent(next(m)) := true

-

イロト イ団ト イヨト イヨト

Dijkstras termination detection algorithm

Distributed Termination Detection: DASM-Procedure

Programs

RegularMachineProgram =

▶ With InitializeMachine(m : MACHINE) =

token(m) := undef
color(m) := white

-

イロト イロト イヨト

Distributed Termination Detection: Procedure

Programs

SupervisorMachineProgram =

ReactOnEvents(me) if¬ Active(me) ∧ token(me) ≠ undef then if color(me) = white ∧ token(me) = whiteToken then ReportGlobalTermination else Rule 3 InitializeMachine(me) Rule 4 Forward(me, whiteToken) Rule 4

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Distributed Termination Detection Initial states

 $\exists m_0 \in MACHINE$ (program(m_0) = SupervisorMachineProgram \land token(m_0) = redToken \land ($\forall m \in MACHINE$)($m \neq m_0 \Rightarrow$

 $(program(m) = RegularMachineProgram \land token(m) = undef)))$

Environment constraints For all the executions and all linearizations holds:

 $\begin{array}{l} \textbf{G} \ (\forall m \in \textit{MACHINE}) \\ (\textit{SendMessageEvent}(m) = \textit{true} \Rightarrow (\textbf{P}(\textit{Active}(m)) \land \textit{Active}(m))) \\ \land \ ((\textit{Active}(m) = \textit{true} \land \textbf{P}(\neg \textit{Active}(m))) \Rightarrow \\ (\exists m' \in \textit{MACHINE}) \ (m' \neq m \land \textit{SendMessageEvent}(m')))) \end{array}$

Nextconstraints

▲□▶▲圖▶▲≣▶▲≣▶ 厘 のQの

Chapter 10

Conclusions: Overall structure

- ▲ ロ ▶ ▲ 団 ▶ ▲ 国 ▶ - 国 - の Q @

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Specification and Verification in Higher Order Logic

Overall structure

- 1. Introduction
- 2. Functional specification and programming
- 3. Language and semantical aspects of higher-order logic
- 4. Proof system for higher-order logic
- 5. Sets, functions, relations, and fixpoints
- 6. Verifying functions
- 7. Inductively defined sets
- 8. Specification of programming language semantics
- 9. Program verification and programming logic

Questions

Chapter 1: Introduction

- 1. Give an overview of the course.
- 2. Explain the terms model, specification, verification.
- 3. Explain language and semantics of propositional logic.
- 4. Give and explain a logical rule. How is this rule applied?
- 5. What is a Hilbert style, what a natural deduction style proof system?
- 6. What is the advantage of a Hilbert style proof system?
- 7. Why is a natural deduction style proof system chosen for interactive proof assistants?

Questions

Chapter 2: Functional programming and specification

- 1. What is the relationship between the data type construct and the case expression? Illustrate the relationship by an example.
- 2. What is the meaning of "fun f x = f x" in ML, what is the meaning of the corresponding definition in Isabelle/HOL?
- 3. Why are there different forms of function definitions in Isabelle/HOL, but only one in ML?
- 4. Why is there a distinction between types with equality and types without equality in ML, but not in Isabelle/HOL?
Chapter 3: Language and semantical aspects of HOL

- 1. What is the foundational reason that HOL is typed? Are there other reasons w.r.t. an application in computer science?
- 2. What does "higher-order" mean?
- 3. Why is predicate logic not sufficient? Give an example?
- 4. What are the types in HOL?
- 5. What are the terms in HOL? Give examples of constants.
- 6. Explain the description operator.
- 7. What is a frame? What is an interpretation?
- 8. How is satisfiability defined?

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三) (三)

- 9. What is a standard model?
- 10. Give and explain one of the axioms of HOL?
- 11. Can the constants True and False be defined in HOL?
- 12. What does it mean that HOL+infinity is incomplete wrt. standard models?
- 13. What is a conservative extension?
- 14. What is the advantage of conservative extensions over axiomatic definitions?
- 15. Which syntactic schemata for conservative extensions were treated in the lecture?
- 16. Give examples of constant definitions.
- 17. Explain the definitions of new types?
- 18. Does a data type definition in Isabelle/HOL lead to a new type?

□ > < @ > < E > < E > _ E

Chapter 4: Proof system for HOL

- 1. A natural deduction proof system distinguishes between formulas, sequents, and rules. What are the differences?
- 2. Isabelle/HOL has nor clear distinction between sequents and rules. Why?
- 3. Explain the different kinds of variables.
- 4. What is a proof state?
- 5. What is the distinction between a rule and a method?
- 6. Explain the method "rule" and show in detail how it can be applied in a proof state?
- 7. What is an elimination rule?
- 8. Here is a proof state (shown on the screen). What is a rule that can be applied?

- 9. Name some rule and their uses.
- 10. What does it mean that a rule is safe?
- 11. Why is verification in Isabelle/HOL usually based on theory Main and not directly on the HOL axioms?
- 12. What is rewriting and simplification?
- 13. How can an Isabelle/HOL user influence the simplification process?
- 14. What is case analysis?
- 15. How differ methods for proof automation?
- 16. Explain a method for proof automation.
- 17. What is a forward proof step?

《曰》《聞》《臣》《臣》 [] 臣]

Chapter 5: Sets, functions, relations, and fixpoints

- 1. What is the relationship between sets and functions?
- 2. What is set comprehension?
- 3. How are sets be realized in Isabelle/HOL?
- 4. Whare is the relationship between sets and types (in Isabelle/HOL)?
- 5. What is the principle of extensionality for functions? Why is it important for verification?
- 6. Define injectivity as a predicate in Isabelle/HOL.
- 7. How are relations represented in Isabelle/HOL. What would be a different representation?

- 8. How can the reflexive and transitive closure of a relation be defined? Can this be done in first order logic?
- 9. What is a well-founded relation?
- 10. What is a measure function?
- 11. Explain an application of well-founded relations?
- 12. What is a complete lattice? Give an example of a complete lattice.
- 13. Explain the Kaster/Tarski theorem. Why is it important? What is the relationship to inductive definitions?

Chapter 6: Verifying functions

- 1. Explain the difference between verification and testing.
- 2. What is the advantage of formal proofs over paper and pencil proofs?
- 3. Property specifications can be wrong. Does this mean that verification is useless?
- 4. What is the relationship between termination and well-definedness of functions?
- 5. How is termination usually proved? Sketch this for gcd and quicksort.
- 6. What are the properties we proved for quicksort?

- 7. Explain shallow embedding.
- 8. How can functional properties of algorithms are proven in Isabelle/HOL?
- 9. Can Isabelle/HOL be used to prove the complexity of an algorithm? What would be needed (together with Chapter 8)?
- 10. What does structural induction over the function parameters mean?

Chapter 7: Inductively defined sets

- 1. Explain the inductive definition of sets. What is the syntactic schema used?
- 2. Why is it necessary to constrain inductive definition to the syntactic schema?
- 3. Give an example of an inductive definition.
- 4. What is the relationsship between recursive and inductive definitions?
- 5. What is a coinductive definition?

- 6. For which situation are coinductive definitions needed?
- 7. What is a transition system? Give examples.
- 8. Explain the syntax of LTL defined in the lecture.
- 9. What is a Kripke structure? How is it related to transition systems?
- 10. What is a liveness property?

<ロ> (四) (四) (三) (三) (三) (三)

Chapter 8:

Specification of programming language semantics

- 1. What is a programming language semantics? Who is a typical user of a semantics?
- 2. What is a deep embedding of a language into a specification framework such as Isabelle/HOL?
- 3. Explain big step semantics.
- 4. What can be expressed in small step semantics that is not directly expressable in big step semantics?

- 5. Show how the semantics of parallel statement execution can be handled in small step semantics.
- 6. What does compositionality mean in the context of denotational semantics?
- 7. How is operational semantics formalized in Isabelle/HOL? Explain motivations for such formalizations.
- 8. Can programming language semantics be used for program verification?

Chapter 9:

Program verification and programming logic

- 1. What does it mean that a Hoare triple is valid? How can validity be formalized?
- 2. How can a programming logic be expressed in HOL?
- 3. Why are assertions in Hoare logic be formalized as functions?
- 4. Can Hoare logic proofs be done in Isabelle/HOL? Explain a rule application?
- 5. What does soundness mean for a Hoare logic? How is soundness proved?